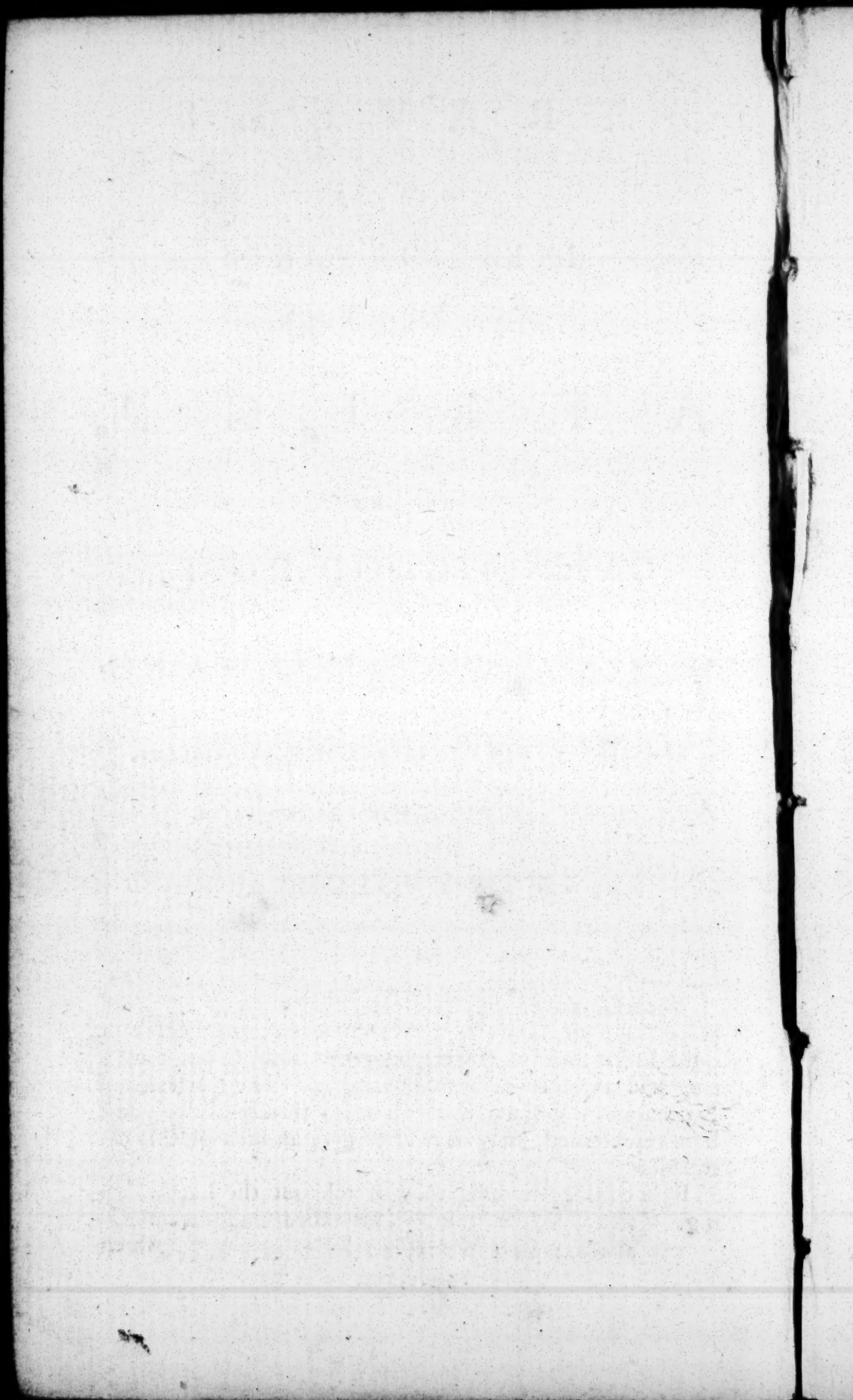




TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

A F R I C A.

I MADE several observations during the thirty-six hours I spent in company with these Gonaquas, which I found very serviceable to me; those remarks particularly which I was enabled to make upon their language and pronunciation. I observed that when they speak they make a clapping noise with the tongue, as the rest of the Hottentots do. The reason of this clapping I shall explain afterwards, as also the manner in which they change it. Although their dialect was the same, they had, notwithstanding, some terminations which neither I nor my Hottentots could always make out their meaning in.

These Gonaquas differed from my Hottentots in several respects; their skin was darker coloured; their nose not quite so flat; and they were bigger in stature; but chiefly they had a nobler air and appearance. The portraits of Narina and a Gonaqua, which are faithfully drawn, and here represented, may answer to give an idea of this distinction.

In accosting any one, they stretch out the hand, saying, *Tabe*, I salute you. This word and ceremony,

which the Caffres make use of, the Hottentots, properly so called, do not.

This similarity of habits, manners, and even conformation; their neighbourhood to Great Caffraria, and the information I afterwards received, convinced me that these hordes of Gonaquas, who resemble in an equal degree the Caffres and the Hottentots, must be a breed of these two nations intermixed.

The men's dress though arranged with more exactness, is of the same shape with that of the Hottentots; but, as the Gonaquas are rather taller, they make their coverings of calves in place of sheep's skins; they are both named *krofs*. Several of them have hanging from their necks a piece of ivory, or very white sheep's bone; and this contrast of the two colours has a good effect, and has a very becoming appearance.

The men cast off every part of their dress that is superfluous, when the weather is very hot, retaining only what they call their *jackals*. This *jackal* is a part of the skin of that animal, with which they hide what nature dictates to them should be concealed and which they tie to their girdle. This veil, is however, very inattentively put on, and may be considered as rather an useless appendage, proving of very little use to their modesty.

However, the women are much fonder of dress than the men, and spend more time, and are more employed in adorning their persons. They have a *krofs* like them, but the apron which hides their sex is larger than those of the Hottentots. While the great heats continue, they retain only this apron, with a skin which falls down, behind, from their girdle to the thick of the leg.

Young girls, when under nine years of age, go quite naked; when they come to that age, they only wear a little apron.

I shall very soon return again to other singularities by which this nation are remarkable, for I have not yet finished what I had to say concerning them.

The Hottentot whom I had sent with Haabas, arrived from his horde that same evening attended by two Gonaquas we had not seen before, who brought me a fat ox, which their chief entreated I would accept. Narina, reminding me of my promises, sent me a basket of goats milk,

milk, of which she knew I was very fond. Her sister, when she saw the presents which Narina had got from me, regretted exceedingly that she had not accompanied her to visit my camp; and she desired the two messengers of Haabas, from whom I had this news, to thank me for those presents I had sent to her by her mother. Having accepted of the ox and the sheep which were sent me, I desired that the messengers should be entertained with tobacco and brandy. One of these people was so very like Narina that I took him for her brother; but he was her cousin only. Mild features, and an elegant person, made this man one of the most comely savages I had ever seen. He gave me several particulars respecting the Gonaquas, which Haabas had not mentioned. He told me that, previous to the war with the Caffres, his horde consisted only of one family, of which Narina's grandfather had been the last chief; that, when he died, it had continued many years without any leader; but that, when the war broke out, Haabas' horde, which formerly dwelt upon the banks of the river, near the mouth of it, had joined his, that they might unite their forces together, if they should be attacked by the common enemy; that the horde would not admit Haabas, alledging that it was free to choose its own chief; and that it was not equitable that strangers should give laws to a horde which had readily admitted them among them. He added, that there had been a great deal of quarrelling, and many combats, between them; that a great deal of blood had been shed, some savages slain, and many of them wounded; but that their general interest having at length, compelled them to unite against a sudden inroad of the Caffres, the wise and valiant behaviour of Haabas, who resisted their attack, had occasioned his being unanimously proclaimed the chief of both hordes, which by alliances, marriages, and good friendship, now constituted only one.

As my brandy began to work upon the brains of these two Gonaquas, they turned so very fond of talking, that they could scarcely finish their stories. It was about one in the morning when I left them, in order to retire to rest; and I advised my people to take my example, as I proposed next morning to go on a grand excursion, in

quest of birds, and had determined to set out by the break of day.

Setting out as soon as the sun appeared, Narina's cousin asked leave to follow me, as he said it pleased him much to see me fire my double-barrelled gun, which was a phenomenon he could not understand.

I agreed, therefore, and gave him my carabine to carry, because it might so happen that large animals should come in our way.

I had very soon an opportunity to gratify *Amiroo's* * curiosity; for having got within shot of a vulture, which I had seen sitting on the point of a rock, I wounded it at the first shot, and killed it with a second, as it was attempting to fly. *Amiroo's* companions, when they returned to the horde, had informed him that I could fire several times successively; but, naturally judging of my arms by his own, he could not believe that it was possible to wound twice with the same arrow. He was therefore much amazed to hear my second report, and to see the animal dead. He said he very anxiously wished to be possessed of an instrument like mine, to repel the Caffres; and he expressed this wish with such an air and tone, as made me conclude, that man, if not the strongest of animals, is however the noblest and most courageous. He asked me why the planters had not fuses of the same kind; a question which seemed to be full of good sense, but it was not possible for me to answer it. The planters not only have none in their possession, but even, before I came, they had never seen any of them; and on all the plantations at a distance from the Cape, my fusee was looked upon as a wonder and a singular curiosity.

During our conversation, I thought I could perceive, by *Amiroo's* looks, that he supposed that I had it in my power to fire as often as I pleased; I was satisfied of this by the embarrassing question which he afterwards put to me. A kite having passed over our heads, I discharged both my shot at it; but it only made a turn round, and continued its flight. Upon this, *Amiroo* asked me why I did not fire until I had killed it: but I could give him no reply, only that the bird was too common; that I did

not

* This was the name of Narina's cousin.

not care for it; and that, besides, so much noise might terrify others which I was more desirous of getting. By this shift, however awkward, I avoided explaining what would have been imprudent for me ever to reveal to him; and I increased that idea of superiority with which white men every where impress savages.

My excursion was very successful; and, among other birds, I killed a cuckoo quite unknown, which will form a new species in this genus.

Its feathers, which had nothing remarkable in them, were, throughout almost the whole body, of a dark brown colour. Its song consists of several sounds differently accented, and it may be heard at a great distance. As it sings whole hours without intermission, it betrays itself, and directs the fowler where to find it. I have called it the *criard* in my ornithology.

I also killed some fly-catchers, and a great many tou-racos, of which we made fricassees, vastly superior to those made of Guinea-hens or partridges with the same sauce.

Narina's cousin observing me bring down all sorts of little birds, close to him, with so much readiness, entreated me to lend him my fusée, that he might try his dexterity; but it would have been bad policy in me to give him any instruction on this subject. Without wishing to be considered a forcerer, I was desirous that he might be satisfied, by his own experience, that there is a wide difference between a European and a Hottentot. Having loaded my fusée without putting lead into it, I allowed him to fire as often as he chose; but, having killed nothing, he became very impatient. Had my piece been loaded in the usual manner, he would perhaps have been as unsuccessful; for, fearing that the priming would burn his face, he turned aside his head whenever he presented the piece. His awkwardness, however, might have done some execution; and, for this reason, I thought it proper to leave nothing to chance: for without doubt, had he killed only a single bird, my superiority would have been immediately lessened in his esteem, and of course in all the horde. If this idea did not secure my person, it at least flattered my vanity.

When

When returning to the camp, we fell in with a flock of bubalés, at two hundred paces distance. Having killed one of them with my carabine, my companion seemed to be greatly surpris'd, not forgetting that at the distance of fifteen paces he had not been able in several shots to kill even a small bird. He began to measure the prodigious distance between us and the bubale. As I noticed that he appeared to be lost in melancholy reflections, and to be under much uneasiness, I looked at him with an air of affection, and gave him all the consolation in my power.—Amiable youth, who didst not know how estimable and engaging that simplicity was, which made thee seem so little before thy fellow-creature, long mayst thou retain thy happy ignorance ! May I be the last stranger who, with rash steps, shall dare to tread thy native plains ; and may thy solitude never be polluted !

We covered our bubale with the branches of trees ; and, on my return, I sent a horse to carry it to the camp.

To amuse Amiroo and his companion, I spent the remainder of the day in skinning my birds. Having invited them to stay with me during the night, telling them that next day they must conduct me themselves to their horde, they appeared to be exceedingly glad ; the evening was therefore spent in great merriment, and we drank tea, as usual, around a large fire. One of the sheep, which Haabas had sent, I ordered to be killed, upon which we made an excellent supper ; and after our repast amused ourselves with dancing and music : nor was the immortal lyre forgotten, for I had given two of them to my new guests. Having seen some of these instruments in the hands of those of their horde who had paid me a visit before them, their reputation was so much raised, that they were impatient to have one, though they did not venture to ask it ; I however anticipated their desire, and by this still added to the esteem and friendship which they entertained for me.

When it was time to go to rest, I informed all my people how I intended to travel next morning, and gave Klaas orders to have my two horses ready at the break of day.

When I awoke, Amiroo's companion had set out to inform Haabas of my intention of paying him a visit the same day.

Whatever

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

Whatever may be the extent of the deserts of Africa, we must not make any calculations as to its population from those innumerable swarms of blacks which are found on the west, and which border all the coasts of the ocean, from the Canary Isles to the environs of the Cape of Good Hope. There is certainly no proportion to enable us to hazard even a conjecture; since by a trade approved by a few, and held in detestation by the greater part, the barbarous navigators of Europe have induced these negroes, by the most villanous attractions, to give up their prisoners, or those who are inferior to them in strength. As their wants increased, they have become inhuman and perfidious beings; the prince has sold his subjects; the mother has sold her son; and nature, as an accomplice, has rendered her prolific.

This disgusting and execrable traffic is, however, still unknown in the interior parts of the Continent. The desert is indeed a desert; and it is only at particular distances that a few hordes are to be met with, that are not numerous, and who subsist on the fruits of the ground, and the produce of their cattle. Having found one horde, one must go a great way to find another. The heat of the climate, the dryness of the sands, the barrenness of the soil, a want of water, rugged and rocky hills, wild animals; and, in addition to all these, the disposition of the Hottentots, somewhat phlegmatic, with their cold habit of body—are all impediments to propagation. When a man has six children, it is considered as wonderful.

In the Gonaquas country, into which I travelled, there were not therefore three thousand people, although thirty or forty leagues in extent; and the horde of Haabas, which included at most four hundred persons, of every age and sex, was considered to be one of the most numerous among them.

The Gonaquas are not like those degenerated and wretched Hottentots, who pine away in the heart of the colonies, contemptible and despised inhabitants, who carry no marks of their ancient original but the empty name; and who enjoy, at the expence of their liberty, a little peace, purchased at a very high price, by the extraordinary labour to which they are subjected on the plantations; and by the despotism of their chiefs, who sell themselves

selves to government. I had here an opportunity to see a free and valiant people, prizing nothing besides independence; never yielding to any impulse foreign to nature, and tending only to destroy their noble, free, and truly philanthropic principles.

I did not intend to proceed among this respectable nation like a worn out hunter, forced by famine and labour to stop at the first place where he can procure a lodging. I had determined to appear there *in fochi*, with the utmost outward shew, but such as might be honourable both for me and them.

I spent all the morning in dressing my hair, which I stuffed with powder, as if I had been to appear among the most elegant company. I combed out my beard, causing it to hang down in the most genteel manner I could. I had permitted it to grow a complete year; not from whim or caprice, as has been ridiculously told throughout the world; nor was it to copy those botanical travellers, who greedily use galls and senna, as a punishment because I did not find out soon enough, or when I wished, this and the other diaphoretic plant, or imperceptible insect; but sound policy had suggested this rule to me, as a fundamental rule. The length of my beard could neither be owing to slovenliness nor neglect. The exact cleanliness of the Dutch I am delighted with; and, for an American Creole, it is not a mere want, arising from custom, but pleasure. While I travelled I changed my linen and clothes three or four times every day; but the scheme to let my beard grow, I determined on before I left the Cape. I had been told of the wars between the Caffres and the planters, and that the latter were held in abomination by the savages; and, as I expected to fall in with either the one or the other, it was highly needful for me that I should give myself, by my outward appearance, as well as by manners and behaviour, an air quite strange, to shew that I had no affinity to the planters. This plan answered me perfectly; for, among all the hordes through whom I passed, I was received as a very remarkable person, nay, as a man of a new species. My insuperable dislike to brandy and tobacco, which both planters and savages use, added still to their surprise. The idea of this favourable prepossession, which I could
not

not but observe, gave me fresh assurance, and even a boldness which procured me great happiness unknown by other travellers. Nothing could hinder me; I marched forwards, and presented myself without pain; and thus I might have travelled over all the centre of Africa, even to Barbary, without the smallest hindrance, had not the ground, so to speak, rejected my steps. Pinching famine will always be insurmountable obstacles to those who may be inclined to hazard so bold and dangerous an enterprise.

My beard, then, proved my chief safeguard; but it daily did me a service no less important: on a journey I always took the precaution, when I washed it, to let it imbibe as much water as it could hold; and, while the day was hot, this refreshed my face, and gave me much comfort and relief.

Having dressed my hair, I equipped myself in the most elegant manner I could. Among my hunting frocks I had one of a darkish brown colour, ornamented with steel buttons, in a cut facet style: this I made my dress of ceremony; as the sun's rays, falling upon the different facets, would by their shining occasion a splendour very useful for exciting the admiration of these savages. Below this frock I had a white vest; and I substituted in place of boots a pair of nankeen drawers, which always appeared to me equally magnificent. In my wardrobe there still remained a pair of European shoes, which I put upon my feet; and I did not neglect my large silver buckles, as they were accidentally exceedingly brilliant. I was very anxious to have a gold-laced hat, but this I was necessitated to do without; and, my drawers made my set knee-buckles of no use, I made a kind of clasp of them, by which I fastened to my hat, such as it was, a noble plume made of ostrich's feathers at full length.

I was sadly vexed however about the furniture of my horse, which was not at all of a piece with the ornaments of his master! in place of that elegant panther's skin which in France would have been considered superb, and which was of no consequence in the eye of a savage, what a shining appearance would one of those howlings of scarlet cloth, which trot regularly every week from Paris to
Poissy

Poissy, have made ! So true is it, that the scarcity of objects constitutes all their value, as well as their merit.

I suggested to my faithful Klaas that he should ride on horseback with me, and be as groom, he dressed himself in the best manner he could : but being anxious that he should appear with some distinction, I gave him an old pair of my own breeches, which he did not put on without assuming an air of vanity, which at the same time discovered the pleasure this treat gave him, and the importance he received from such an ornament.

Having made every thing ready for my departure, I sent off two of my hunters with their guns to give notice to the horde of my approach : and having taken breakfast soon after, I hung my poniard from a button-hole of my waistcoat ; put a pair of pistols into my girdle ; and another pair, with my double-barrelled gun, at the bow of my saddle ; and immediately mounted my horse. Klaas, who was charged with my carabine, did the same ; and followed after me, leading with him my four dogs. He in turn, was followed by four hunters, escorting one of my people, whom I appointed to carry a box with two red handkerchiefs, knives, a few copper rings, pieces of steel for tinder-boxes, and some other presents which I purposed to give to the horde. Amiroo marched upon our head, to lead us the proper road.

We first proceeded upon the banks of the river, going against its current for near an hour ; after which Amiroo made us leave its banks and conducted us between two high mountains, in a narrow defile, the length and windings of which were fully two leagues. At the other end of this valley, being again within a few paces of the river, the country opened to us ; and from this place pointing out with his finger a small height upon which I noticed a kraal, our guide told us that we should there find Haabas. It was yet about ten gun-shots from us. The way had been longer than I thought ; for we were full three hours in this march. When I was within two hundred paces of the horde, I discharged both my shot, and desired my four hunters to do the same. The other two, whom I had sent before us, returned our salute, by discharging theirs ; and this was to all the horde the signal for an universal shout of joy. I shall not trouble my
readers

readers with any reflections upon this affecting scene: many will share in the soft emotions of my heart; and prefer a true relation of this kind, however simple. I saw all these people come out of their tents, and form themselves into little companies; but, as I gradually approached, the women, the young girls, and children, all went out of sight, and returned to their different huts. The men, who only continued with their chief at their head, came out to meet me; upon which I alighted, and repeating the words *tabe tabe* to Haabas, I took the old man by his hand, which I squeezed in mine. He returned my salutation with every appearance of a grateful heart; and seemed very much affected by this mark of honour, which was conferred chiefly upon him. I was received with the same ceremony by all the other men; only that, suppressing, as a token of respect the sign of the hand, they substituted in its room that of gently bowing the head; and that, in pronouncing the word *tabe*, they accompanied this word with a more sensible clapping with their tongue.

Each of them in particular examined me with the greatest attention, even to the most minute part of my dress: every thing took their looks. Haabas himself, who had never before seen me in my camp but merely in an undress, or in my hunting apparel, seemed surprised at my strange attire: I thought that he discovered much more respect in his behaviour than usual, and that, as he passed me, he appeared to pay me much more deference.

I had alighted from my horse under the shade of a big tree, to which they came to complement me; but I continued there only a few minutes to refresh myself. It was a real feast to me to contemplate this interesting horde, to which I proceeded escorted by all my troop; and as I passed in front of one of the huts, which like those of the Hottentots have only a very low door, the mistress of it, who at first only appeared to look at me at a distance, immediately retired; so that I was under the necessity of stooping every moment, in order to examine the inside. It was a very curious sight to see these brown visages without motion, and as it were fixed to the wall, in the back part of the hut, universally displaying

ing the appearance of so many portraits in the shade. I should have left my card with each of these ladies, for none of them received me.

They gradually however grew more familiar, and at length I saw myself surrounded by them. They presented me milk on all sides; but I did not observe Narina yet among the number of these inquisitive females. Having asked after her, some of them ran to bring her; and she came soon after, bringing a basket of goats milk, quite warm, which she quickly presented to me. I drank some of it, preferring it to that offered by the rest; both because of the natural graceful manner in which she gave it me, and of the care she had been at to make the vessel perfectly clean, which was by no means the case with the other women.

The females were all dressed in their richest habiliments, newly greased and *loughbowed*, and having their faces painted in a hundred different manners, sufficiently discovering what noise the news of my arrival had made in the horde, and the remarkable respect which they entertained for a stranger. Narina had ornamented herself with the presents which I had given her; but I remarked, with no little astonishment, that she had not followed the etiquette of her other companions, by not greasing herself like the rest. She knew how much I disliked this refinement in her dress; and, whatever such a sacrifice might have cost her, she had submitted to it to please me. She introduced me to her sister, who was very pretty; but whether it was that prepossession had blinded me, or that the smell of her unctions offended me, I cannot say, but I did not find in her the same attractions as in Narina, nor did she occasion the smallest emotions in my breast.

Having reached the dwelling of Haabas, he pointed out his wife to me, who had nothing to distinguish her from the others; and I found here, as is often the case in other places, that the commandant's lady was old and ugly enough. This however did not deter me from presenting her, like a polite courtier, with a red handkerchief; which she took from me without ceremony, and immediately bound about her head. To this present I also added a knife, and a piece of steel for striking fire
with

with a flint; but having a great anxiety to know her taste, and was very glad to see a savage female embarrassed about the choice of her dress, I shewed her all my package of glass-ware, entreating her to select what she liked best. Upon this occasion I did not enjoy the satisfaction which I expected; for she laid her hands, without hesitating an instant, upon some red and white necklaces; the other colours, she said, were too like her skin, and would produce no effect, and were besides far from agreeable to her taste. I have always observed that the savages generally set very little value upon black or blue. I gave her likewise some large brass wire, for two pair of bracelets; and I thought that this article she put a higher value upon than any.

The other women did not see these presents without envy. They raised their hands in ecstasy; and in their admiration declared, with a loud voice, that the spouse of Haabas was the luckiest of women, and the most magnificent in jewels that ever had been in all the hordes of the Gonaquas.

I then distributed the remainder of the glass beads which I had brought with me; and I candidly acknowledge I manœuvred in such a manner as that the youngest and prettiest might have the largest share.

I gave to the men knives, tinder-boxes, and rolls of tobacco. My intention in visiting this horde personally was, that all the families which composed it might share in my bounty; and the package I brought with me was pretty considerable.

Haabas having entreated me, in the name of several infirm old men who were not able to go abroad, to follow him, and pay them a visit, I readily acquiesced to this request, and we entered their huts: they were all attended by children of eight or ten years of age, entrusted with the care of giving them their food, and of rendering them all those services which are requisite to the debility of years. This respectable institution among these savage people, struck me very much, and I fully testified my approbation of it to my conductor. Though these old men, for most part, were confined only by their great age, and not by those infirmities which are the usual attendants of people in civilized nations, I remarked with

no little astonishment that their hair was not white, and that at the extremities it scarcely began to turn grey.

I was next conducted to a hut entirely set apart from the rest, which contained a horrid spectacle—a miserable wretch covered with ulcers from head to foot. Having stooped in order to enter, the infectious smell that proceeded from the hut made me start back with horror. This poor creature had lain here for more than a year, without any one daring to approach him; so much were they in fear of being infected by this disorder, which was accounted contagious: his wife indeed, and two of his children, had died about two months before. His food was thrown to him at the entrance of his habitation, or rather tomb; for to me he seemed to be no longer a living being. His situation, which was truly deplorable, incited my pity; for he had remained long stretched out amidst his own filth and ordure: and I was extremely sorry that I could not by some efficacious remedy administer relief to him.

I remembered in vain that at Surinam we gathered ourselves the balm of Copahu, and that of Racassir, which I am confident is the Tolu of the apothecaries shops; and that with this assistance alone we easily cured our negroes. But this was to no purpose here: Africa did not produce any of these salutary plants; or at least, if it did, I knew not where to go in search of them. However I thought of a method which, if it should not cure his evils, would at least suspend them for a little.

I therefore began by telling these savages to be perfectly easy: assuring them that the disorder was not infectious, and that it could not be communicated by coming into immediate contact with the diseased person, far less by the air that surrounded him. To persuade them the more to believe me, I confidently told them that I was acquainted with the disease: for without this precaution the plan I had formed to relieve him would have been in the greatest danger of miscarrying; as an invincible prejudice made them all fear an epidemical distemper.

I told them, then, that it would be proper to anoint the whole body of the patient with the fat of mutton melted; that this harmless remedy would restore to his
parched

parched skin a little of its suppleness, and would at least enable him to move his limbs with ease. I likewise ordered several mats to be given him, begging him to endeavour to draw them under him; and, weak as he was, he succeeded according to my wish. I next proposed that a new hut should be erected for him, and that he should be removed thither. This advice was received with acclamations by all present; and, that their benevolent ardour might not have time to cool, both my people and I, put our hands to the work: and the hut was soon finished, and in a condition to receive the sick man.

I always thought that this man had been attacked by that destructive scourge which poisons the sources of life, and destroys pleasure by pleasure itself. Though strangers to this scourge, as well as to the Hottentots of the Cape, who know it well, I imagined it might have been by degrees conveyed to the Gonaquas, by passing from one to another. A journey, or some fatal connection, had undoubtedly been the cause of this poor wretch's misfortune.

The hut being ready, he was carried out, extended upon mats. He was then conveyed to a place near his new habitation, and the old one was destroyed; whilst I was looked on as a beneficent god by these good savages. With what anxiety did they follow the unfortunate patient, with their eyes fixed sometimes upon me, and sometimes upon the miserable wretch of whose cure they had already conceived great hopes! for that powerful balm of the heart beamed on all their countenances, and doubled their tender compassion. With what eagerness did I see them all flock round me, and pity the sufferings of their brother! and the women, above all, implore success to my skill, that I might give some relaxation to his punishment, if possible, and restore him to life!

He was now become like a skeleton, covered with a shrivelled and dry skin, through which some parts of his bones, in the legs, arms, sides, and reins appeared; all his joints were monstrously swelled; and the worms, by anticipation, were devouring him all over.

He was carried into his tent after the friction I had ordered. I then recommended him to the care and attention of the whole horde; and begged that they would give him nothing but milk to feed on.

I doubt much whether this assistance was sufficient to relieve him: unfortunately my skill extended no farther; and, being fully persuaded that his death was inevitable, I thought that to hasten it would be the greatest service that could be done to him. If I have lengthened his miserable existence for a few days, his cruellest enemy could not have done more.

On my return to the habitation of Haabas, his wife presented me with some milk to refresh me; and I found that a sheep had been killed for the entertainment of me and my people.

A few steaks I ordered to be broiled on some coals before the hut; but the recollection of the horrid spectacle which I had seen, so haunted my imagination, that it quite deprived me of my appetite. Fearing however that these savages might imagine that their food disgusted me, which would have mortified them cruelly, I forced myself to eat a little. From the place where I sat, through the circle that surrounded me, I saw my people, who were less delicate than their master, regaling themselves on pieces which had been distributed among them, and amusing themselves as if they had been at a wedding.

When the repast was finished, we hardly had time to return before night. Taking leave therefore of my good neighbours, after many times repeating *tabe*, I mounted my horse. I was followed by almost the whole of the horde: but my time becoming every moment shorter, I made use of my spurs; and in less than an hour Klaas and I reached our camp. The rest of my people arrived much later; for about twenty of the Gonaquas, both men and women, led by curiosity, had accompanied them. Upon any other occasion this visit might have displeased me; but at this time I had plenty of provisions, and twenty mouths more could not be burthensome in any manner.

The reader will, no doubt, expect to find the beautiful Narina among the number of those who paid me this unexpected visit. She was indeed; and, though it may seem surprising, she concealed herself so well that I did not find out till next morning that she had arrived the night before. The whole of the night was spent in dancing and singing;

singing; but, as I was unwilling to deprive any one of a share in this party of pleasure which had been formed by chance alone, I did not attempt to interrupt them.

One of the surest means of maintaining that superiority over savages which the presumptuous European haughtily assumes, is not, as is generally thought, to intimidate them, and to employ threats and terror. This ridiculous plan must have been invented only by a rash fool, or a cowardly commander at the head of a large army, who took advantage of his force to impose despotic and severe laws. An instance to be met with in some late voyages, is an evident proof that it is not by impetuosity, and the drawn sword, that mankind are to be civilized. The tragical end of a late enterprising navigator ought ever to be a striking lesson to those who may adopt the same maxims*. I am satisfied that one should never venture to ask from people in a state of nature, what would cost them too great a sacrifice to give; that it is prudent to lose a little with a view to gain more; that it is only by complacency that one can insinuate himself into their favour; and that the principal method of succeeding with them is first to gain their love. Entertaining such principles, it may easily be supposed that I do not believe in *eaters of men*; and that there is no country so desert, or so little known, into which I would not penetrate without fear or apprehension. Suspicion is the principal cause of the barbarity of savages, if we can so call the great care which they employ to remove from us, and even to destroy every thing that appears likely to endanger our safety or interrupt our repose.

Unable to sleep during the whole night, I arose at break of day: but what was my surprise when I saw Narina? She appeared to have a more embarrassed air, and a more bashful look, than usual; and it was only then, as I have already said, that she acknowledged she had arrived the preceding evening. I reproached her in the severest terms for having thus concealed herself from me, and I entreated her to tell me the reason; but, notwithstanding all I could say, she gave me no positive answer. Her silence with regard to this was carried even to obstinacy.

* The author here seems to allude to the death of our unfortunate and ever-to-be-lamented captain Cook.

cy. At length, as if afraid that she had raised her hopes too high, she became more timid in proportion as she guessed the suspicions that I appeared to entertain on her account: this reserve made me love her more. The coffee being ready, I gave her a part of my breakfast.

This day also was wholly spent in dancing and merriment; but next morning the whole horde, attracted by curiosity arrived at my camp. Some were coming, and others departing; so that they crossed each other in all parts on the way. This spectacle to me had the appearance of the moving picture of a village festival, and I received them all with the same cordiality. I enquired after my poor patient, and received an answer which pleased me much. They told me that he never spoke of me but with tears of gratitude; that he continued to suffer very much; but that there had been a great change in his situation by the cleanliness I had procured him. He enjoyed at least the consolation of seeing his companions, and of discoursing with them; for, trusting to my advice, they no longer feared to enter his hut, or to approach him. Their visits, by engaging his thoughts, poured over his wounds a more salutary balm than plants; and made him in some degree forget his misfortunes. I am doubtful whether he recovered after the desperate situation in which I saw him; but if it was possible for him to get better, I think this moral remedy must have contributed a good deal towards his relief. Can there be any fate more cruel than that of seeing our friends and nearest relations desert us, and banished from society like an abandoned carcase, the sight of which creates horror? Every one related these particulars after his own manner, accompanied with thanks; which were the more sincere according as these people were more nearly connected with my patient, either by the ties of blood or friendship.

The procession continued till the afternoon of the second day, when these worthy Gonaquas took leave of my camp to return to their horde. I could not help recommending my patient to them in the most earnest manner; and I told them, that the most flattering mark of esteem and respect they could confer upon me, would be the care they might take of him. I particularly charged Narina to carry him, in my name, a small provision of tobacco;

I then gave a few more presents to this young savage, and permitted her to depart.

I had been very little in the company of this girl; but the attachment I had conceived for her was so natural and simple, I was so much accustomed to her manners, and I found her disposition and mine so much alike, that I could hardly persuade myself that our acquaintance was of so short a date, and that it was so soon to terminate. I thought I must admire her for the last time—but other cares and other views.

It is time to notice that the women of this country had not behaved in the same manner, with my people, as those of the river Gamtoos: they shewed the greatest reserve; and when the men went away, not one of them remained behind.

I own that the visits of these people, who came in great bodies too frequently, and remained too long, began at length to displease me; for I was afraid, and not without good reason, that some disturbance might arise around me, or that my people would acquire a taste for dissipation. They had already begun to fail in their duty; hunting appeared to engage less of their attention than formerly; and almost every moment of their time was spent in dancing. The people who had the care of keeping and feeding my cattle, seemed to perform this duty with reluctance, and suffered them to stray wherever they pleased; while others absented themselves during the night, and returned only in the morning to sleep. I thought, however, that it would be most prudent for me to wink at these petty abuses, and to bring them all gradually back to their duty. The heat now began to grow insupportable; the sun, having passed the equator, darted his rays perpendicularly upon us, and scorched us so much that it would have been dangerous to expose ourselves in the heat of the day; and my tent, during these moments, was converted into a real stove, which I was forced to abandon. These were sufficient motives to induce me to transport my penates to a place more shaded, under some thick grove; but I remembered the rendezvous where I appointed to meet the envoys I had sent to the Caffres. It might happen that, not finding me in their return at Koks-Kraal, they might suppose either that some unforeseen

seen misfortune had come over me; or that, tired of waiting for them, I had resolved to depart, and pursue my journey. Such a step would have thrown them into the greatest embarrassment; and, for my part, I was too much interested in the fate of my two friends to desert them; nor would all the birds of Africa have induced me to be guilty of so base an action. Therefore I determined to continue where I was till they should arrive; but I resolved to bring back all my people to their former exercises, and I myself first set the example.

Neither did I fail, according to my usual custom, to devote a part of every evening to my journal; and it was here that I at length began to be acquainted with those differences which distinguish one Hottentot from another, and particularly the Gonaquas from all the other hordes I had seen before.

Haabas's kraal, about four hundred paces distant from the river Groot-Vis, was situated on the declivity of a little hill, which extended with an easy slope to the foot of a chain of mountains, covered with a forest of very large trees; a small rivulet intersected it in the middle, and discharged itself into the river. All the huts, about forty in number, built upon a space about six hundred feet square, formed several crescents, and were all connected together by small enclosures belonging to each. In these, each family, in the day time, shut up their calves and their lambs, which are not allowed to follow their mothers; and which suck only in the morning and evening, when the women milk the cows and the she-goats. Besides these, there were three large enclosures well fenced round, which were destined for confining, only during the night, the whole flocks of the horde.

Their huts, constructed like those of the Hottentots in the colonies, were eight or nine feet in diameter, and covered with ox or sheep skins, but more generally with mats. They had only one opening, low and narrow; and the family kindled their fire in the middle of the hut. The thick smoke which filled these kennels, and which had no other vent but the door, added to the stench which they always retain, would have stifled any European who might have had the courage to remain in them two minutes: custom, however, renders all this supportable

table to these savages. Indeed they do not continue in them during the day, but on the approach of night each returns to his habitation, spreads out his mat, covers it with a sheep's skin, and sleeps as soundly upon it as if he lay on the softest down. When the nights are too cold, for a covering they use a skin like that upon which I lay; the Gonaquas always procure them by barter. In the morning these beds are rolled up, and placed in a corner of the hut; and, in fine weather, they expose them to the air and the sun. They then beat them, one after another, to shake off, not bugs as in Europe, but insects, and another kind of vermin no less troublesome, to which these savages are rendered very subject by the excessive heat of the climate, and which, notwithstanding all their care and attention, they are not able to get rid of. When they have no pressing business to employ them, they make strict search for these vermin, which they destroy with their teeth: this seems to them the readiest and easiest method.

Some author, I know not who, has thought proper to believe that these vermin are a ready resource for the Hottentots, and form part of their nourishment, and perhaps even a delicacy. Nothing can be more false than this ridiculous assertion: on the contrary, I can safely aver that they perform this office or ceremony with as much disgust as our women or servant maids perform it with contrary sensations with regard to our children.

I have before advanced that in their dress the Gonaqua women assume an air of elegance unknown to the Hottentots of the colonies. Their garments, however, do not differ in their shape, except that the former wear them larger; and that the apron of modesty, which they call *neuyp-krofs*, is wider, and descends almost to the knees. But it is in ornaments, I might rather say the embroidery lavished on their dresses, that the riches and magnificence upon which they pique themselves consist. It is, above all, in the arrangement of the apron that they shew their art and taste. The design, the distribution of the compartments, and the mixture of the colours, are all particularly attended to. The more their vestments are loaded with beads, the more they are valued; and they even ornament their bonnets with them. These
bonnets,

bonnets, if possible, are made of the skin of the zebra; because, being white, and intersected by brown or black stripes, gives a kind of relief to their physiognomy; and, as they themselves express it, adds something more enticing to their charms. Besides this, they are more or less sumptuous according to the beads and glass ornaments which they possess, and with which they encumber their bodies. They make tissues also, with which they ornament their legs, like half-boots. Those who cannot get at this degree of magnificence, confine themselves, especially for the legs, to adorn them with the same reeds as those of which they make their mats, or with ox-hide cut into thongs, and beat by a mallet into a round form. It is this custom which has led several travellers, copying their accounts from one another, to say that these people surround their arms and legs with the intestines of animals torn from their bodies as soon as they are killed; and that they devour these ornaments in proportion as they become putrid—a gross error, which deserves to be buried in oblivion with the works by which it has been propagated. It has perhaps sometimes happened, that a Hottentot, pressed by hunger, may have employed this resource as the only way of preserving his existence, and devoured both his thongs and his sandals; but, because civilized people have been forced, by the horrors of a siege, to contend for the vilest food, must we conclude that uncivilized nations eat rags and nastiness?

At first, these thongs of leather and reeds which the Hottentots put round their legs were indispensibly necessary for preserving them from the pricking of briars and thorns, and the biting of serpents, which abound in these regions of Africa; but luxury transforms the most useful inventions into abuses. Instead of those pieces of skin which were so serviceable, the women have substituted beads, which, by reason of their fragility, are not of long duration. Thus, among savages, as among the most enlightened nations, the wisest and the best combined institutions are at length perverted and corrupted. The luxury of the Hottentots, however ill understood it may appear, sufficiently proves that vanity belongs and is extended to all climates; and that, in spite even of nature, a woman is always a woman. The habit I was in of
constantly

constantly seeing the Hottentots, never reconciled me to their practice of painting their bodies in a thousand different ways. It always appeared hideous and disgusting; nor do I know what charms they pretend to receive from this daubing, which is not only ridiculous, but even fetid. I have here given the figure of a *Hottentot lady* in all the luxury of her attire; the reader may be assured that in this portrait there is nothing exaggerated or overcharged.

They shew the greatest fondness for red and black colours. The first is composed of a kind of ochry earth, which is to be met with in several places of the country, and which they mix and dilute with grease: this earth resembles brick-dust very much, or tiles reduced to powder. Their black is nothing more than soot, or the charcoal of tender wood. Some women indeed are contented with painting only the prominence of the cheeks; but in common they daub their whole body over, in compartments varied with a certain degree of symmetry: and this part of their dress requires no small portion of time.

These two colours so much esteemed by the Hottentots, are always perfumed with the powder of the *boughou*, which to an European has no very agreeable smell. A Hottentot, would perhaps, find our odours and essences no less insupportable; but the *boughou* has over our rouge and pastes the advantage of not being pernicious to the skin, of not attacking and injuring the lungs; and the female Hottentot, who is acquainted with neither amber, musk, nor benjamin, never knows what it is to be oppressed by vapours, spasms, and the head-ache.

The men never paint their faces; but I have frequently seen them use a preparation made of both colours mixed, to paint the upper lip as far as the nostrils; by which they enjoyed the advantage of constantly inhaling the odour of the substance employed for this purpose. Young girls sometimes, to favour their lovers so far, apply this paint for them under the nose; and in this point they shew a kind of coquetry which has a very powerful influence over the heart of a Hottentot novice. The reader, must not however, infer, from what I have said, that the Hottentot women pay so much attention to dress as to neglect those daily and useful occupations, to which na-

ture and their usages call them. I never heard them speak of it but on certain festivals which happen very seldom. Separated from Europe by an immensity of sea, and from the Dutch colonies by desert mountains and impassable rocks, too much communication with these people has not yet led them to the excesses of our depravation: on the contrary, when they have the happiness of being mothers, Nature addresses them in another language; they assume, more than in any other country, a spirit suitable to their state, and readily give themselves up to those cares which she imperiously requires from them. Whenever a child is born, it never quits the back of its mother; she there fixes her dear burden by means of an apron, which keeps it close to her body; and another tied with thongs under the infant's thighs, supports it, and prevents it from slipping down. This second apron, like the first, formed of the skin of some wild animal, is commonly ornamented with beads; and this is all that settles the furniture of the new-born infant. Whether the mother goes to her labour or to a ball, and even although she dance, she never leaves her child for a moment. There is nothing of the infant seen but the head, and it never cries or squawls except when it has occasion to suck. The mother then turns it and draws it to one side; nor is it requisite for her to untie it, except when she is advanced in years, or has had several children. Without displacing the one she carries, she puts her breast to it under her arm, or throws it over her shoulder; the child, satisfied, then ceases crying; and the nurse continues her dance.

When the mother thinks that it is able to crawl and to assist itself, she places it on the ground before her hut; and by force of creeping it learns the use of its limbs, and from day to day tries to stand upright: one attempt leads to a second; it becomes bold, and soon acquires sufficient strength to run and to follow its mother. This method, so simple and natural, is in my opinion much better than our leading-strings, which crush and confine the breast. The disproportion between the strength of their legs and the weight of their bodies, which forces our children to hang upon these too officious supporters, frequently

frequently lames them, at least ruins their health and disfigures them during the remainder of their days.

I did not, either in Africa or America, meet with a lame or deformed person among the savages: to find these one must travel in Europe.

The care taken by their mothers to rub their bodies with mutton grease, is what contributes to give the children of savages that agility and strength by which they are distinguished. The men themselves think it necessary to use this precaution, which restores to the skin that pliability which the impetuosity of the winds and the heat of the sun take from it.

The Hottentots, less favoured by the productions of the African climates than the Caribs are by those of America, do not, like the latter, enjoy the benefit of the *rocou*, which renders them a very essential service. It is well known that this tree bears a kind of fruit or pod which divides itself into two parts, and sheds about sixty grains, the pellicle of which is oily, and of a reddish colour. The Indian, who always goes naked, never neglects to rub himself with these every morning from head to foot; and by means of this unction he preserves himself from sun strokes, and from being stung by mosquitoes, and checks perspiration, commonly too copious between the tropics.

When a Hottentot woman is about to lie in, she is visited by an old woman of the horde, who waits on her while in labour, and her delivery is always easy. The Symphysis and Caesarian operation are unknown among these savages. They hold no consultations, nor do they debate whether they shall save the child at the expence of the mother's life; and should it happen, but this is very rare, that the life of both could not be preserved, a horrid distinction would certainly not order the mother to be assassinated, and the child would not be spared.

I asked of the Hottentots themselves whether it was true that a mother who brings forth twins immediately destroys one of them. This crime against nature is indeed very rare, and these people revolt at the idea of it; but it has its source, however incredible it may appear, in the tenderest love. It is a fear of not being able to nourish two children, or of seeing them both perish, that

has led some mothers to sacrifice one of them. Besides, the Gonaquas are exempt from this reproach; and I perceived that my question displeased them. But how dare we reproach these savages for using this precaution, for which I have given at least a plausible motive, whilst in the heart of the most enlightened nations, notwithstanding the number of hospitals opened by benevolence, we every day see mothers so unnatural as to expose with their own hands, and to leave in the streets, the innocent helpless fruits of their womb?

Would it not therefore be an unjust calumny against these people, to give as a constant practice a few barbarous actions which they condemn, and which they believe so well by their conduct. In more hordes than one I have met mothers who suckled twins, and who did not appear to be in the least embarrassed with them.

Travellers, however, have not hesitated to affirm that this barbarous practice exists; and what Dr Sparrman relates in his Voyage to the Cape*, as to the fate of children at the breast who lose their mothers, is equally without foundation.

“Another custom, no less horrid,” says he, “which has not been hitherto remarked by any one, but which I have been *fully assured* exists amongst the Hottentots, is that, if a mother happens to die, the child at her breast is interred alive with her. This very year, in the place where I was, the following circumstance happened:—A Hottentot woman having died on the farm of an epidemical distemper, the rest of the Hottentots, who thought that they were not in a condition to educate the female child which she had left, or who were unwilling to take the burden of it, had wrapped it up, still alive, in a sheep’s skin, in order to inter it with the deceased mother; but some farmers in the neighbourhood prevented them from accomplishing their design. My landlady, who was already advanced in years, told me that she herself, about sixteen or seventeen years before, found in the quarter of Swellendam a Hottentot child wrapped up in skins, tied fast to a tree, near the place where its mother had been recently interred. Enough of life was still remaining in this
“child

* Vol. ii. p. 73.

“child to be saved, and it was carried away by Mrs Kock’s relations; but it died at the age of eight or nine. It results from this instance, and from several others which I learned from the planters,” &c.

From the words of this botanist, we must conclude that he saw nothing of what he relates, since he acknowledges, as he does throughout his whole work, that he received his intelligence from the planters. He must have been too much in their company not to know how far one can depend on their memories or their judgment; and for this reason he might have saved us the trouble of reading a great many fables which ought to have been exploded. It is not by hearsay that we are to judge of people, or to make comparisons with others. In the most faithful and just relation how many circumstances escape us which would throw light upon facts, always ill understood when one has not been an eye-witness! Was not the epidemical distemper, of which he says the first mother died, a sufficient reason to alarm the Hottentots, and to make them remove both from the dead body and the child, through a fear of being infected; which, considering their prejudice, is a sufficient motive to induce them to abandon every thing in an instant, even their flocks, which are their only riches? With respect to the second child, found in the canton of Swellendam, the case probably might have been the same; and until a reasonable cause is assigned for this barbarity, I shall vindicate the character of the mildest and most affectionate people that I know. In short, such ridiculous tales with regard to these savages would have been long since forgotten with the history of witches and apparitions, were there not old women to repeat them, and children to read them.

It would seem that some people take a pleasure in decrying unpolished nations all over the globe, who are known to be the most peaceable and the most patient; whilst, filled with esteem and respect for the eastern nations, the Chinese for instance, they pass slightly over a custom, which prevails among mothers at Pekin, of exposing in the streets, during night, all the children which they want to get quit of, that at break of day the carriages and cattle as they pass may crush them to death, or

that they may be devoured by the hogs. Certain travellers who have visited Asia tell us that the great lords in Thibet go on a pilgrimage to Putola, the residence of the Grand Lama, to get some of the excrement of this sovereign high priest; and that they carry it about their necks in amulets, or sprinkle it over their food like pepper.

This filthy ceremony has nothing more disgusting in it than that falsely attributed to the Hottentots in the celebration of their marriages? Masters of ceremony, which they have not—or rather priests, with whom they are still less acquainted, are imagined to have the supernatural power of drenching from the urinary passage the bride and bridegroom, who, prostrated at the feet of the person who besprinkles them, devoutly receive the liquor, and rub it carefully over their whole bodies, without losing one drop of it. The author I have already quoted is much inclined to believe all these rhapsodies on the bare information of the planters, when he alledges that these marriage ceremonies are not without foundation; but that this practice is no longer in use, but in the interior part of the kraals, and never in the presence of the planters.

Kolben mentions this ceremony in the most particular manner; nay he has even set it before the eyes of his readers in a print, in order to stamp a kind of authenticity on it. Some other ignorant authors have followed Kolben, and even the writer of the French translation of Dr Sparrman; to which he has been pleased to add, for the purpose of completing the last volume, I know not what extract from *A New System of Geography*. The fact is, I have never read any voyage to Africa in which the absurd dreams of Kolben have not been more or less introduced. This plagiarism, which disgraces the writings of a respectable author, merits no credit. The reveries of the fire-side traveller who wrote more than eighty years ago, are there repeated word for word, not only as to the marriage ceremony of the Hottentots, but also their reception into an order of chivalry, which closes with a general immersion. I have been too tedious with these details; but it is my duty to mention faithfully what I saw, and the conclusions which I have drawn from it.

The female Hottentots are subject to periodical indispositions like the Europeans; and all the circumstances attending

attending them are quite the same. The wife or daughter of a Gonaqua, when she discovers her situation, instantly leaves the hut of her husband or parents, retires to some distance from the horde, has no farther correspondence with them, erects a kind of habitation for herself, if it be cold, and remains shut up there, till being purified by bathing, she is fit to appear again in public. As in these circumstances the dress of these savages is very ill fitted for concealing a woman's situation, she would be subjected to severe raillery if any person should notice it; there would be nothing more necessary to disgust her intended spouse, and this would issue in a speedy separation. It is consequently a natural shame, founded upon a sense of her own imperfection, and a fear of displeasing, that leads a woman to seclude herself in this way for several days: and this is one of those habits which might have been easily mistaken for a religious custom, by people who, having only observed superficially, did not take notice that this conduct, apparently mysterious, is nothing else in fact than the result of cleanly decency.

The young women have never any intercourse with men until they are fit for bearing children. They commonly become marriageable about the age of twelve or thirteen; and after that period, so soon as they find a young man to their taste, they are allowed by their parents to reside with him.

In this country, where all are on a footing by birth, if they are males, all ranks are of consequence equal, or rather there is no distinction of rank at all. Vanity and luxury, which consume wealth, and produces so many changes, in other countries, are unknown among these savages; limited to the mere wants of nature, the means by which they supply them not being exclusive, they may be, and indeed they are, employed by all. All the combinations of pride for the prosperity of families, and the accumulation of perhaps ten fortunes in the same strong box, occasion here no intrigues, disorder, nor crimes. As the parents have no cause to oppose these sentiments of prepossession which incline a young person more towards one object than to another, all marriages are the result of a reciprocal affection, and are always attended with happiness;
and

and as, to continue them, they are bound by no other law but love, they have no other reason for their dissolution but indifference. These unions, the work of simple nature, are more permanent than might be expected amongst these shepherds; and their love for their children makes each party daily more necessary to the other.

Thus all the formality of their marriages lies in a simple but sincere engagement to live together as long as they find it agreeable. When two young folks enter into this engagement, they become immediately man and wife; and this connection is certainly not solemnized by those foolish and filthy aspersions which I have mentioned. A few sheep, and at times an ox, are slain to celebrate this little festival: the parents give the young couple a few cattle; and the latter build a hut, and take possession of it the same day, to reside there together while love preserves harmony between them: for, as I have mentioned, if any difference arises in the family which cannot be reconciled but by a separation, it soon follows. They part with one another; and each seeking out a happier situation elsewhere, is perfectly free to marry again. Established order requires that their effects which are common should be divided in a friendly manner: but if it happens that the husband, in the station of master, pretends to keep the whole, the wife for that reason is never without protectors and support; the family stand up in her defence, and sometimes even all the horde. Keen disputation is then the consequence; which frequently issues in blows, and the stronger party give laws to the weaker.

Mothers take with them the young children, especially if they are daughters; the boys, if grown up, go with the father, and are always of his party.

These unhappy accidents, it must be acknowledged, are very uncommon; but what no less merits observation, is, that in these cases, as well as in their other disputes, there is no law, and no settled custom, by which good order can be restored. We must hold as absurd what Kolben has mentioned about their courts of justice, their mode of procedure in civil matters, the superior council of the nation, their prisons, their public meetings, and
in

in a word all those regulations which very ill agree with the name of savage, since a people so governed would in no respect differ from us but in colour and climate. I never saw nor heard that a quarrel issued in murder; but if this misfortune should happen, and if the death be cause of regret, the family, very moderate in their revenge, would be satisfied with the law of retribution. For so horrid a crime all the horde would follow the assassin, and force him to leave the country, if he escaped being put to death.

Polygamy is by no means inconsistent with the sentiments of the Hottentots; but it is far from being generally in use among them. They are at liberty to take as many wives as they incline; that is to say, according to their constitution; and this commonly reduces the number to *one*.

But it is never seen, that one woman lives with two men; and the wisdom of nature, desirous that a father might be able to acknowledge his children, impressed on the mind of the Gonaquas an insuperable hatred of this infamous prostitution. It hurts these people so much, that a husband, knowing the most trifling act of infidelity in his way, may immediately kill her, without running the hazard of punishment.

This observation may be easily judged is liable to some exceptions; and the reader will recollect with what freedom the first free Hottentots I met with mixed among mine: but, as they were nearer the colony, example is a very powerful seducer; and I even acknowledge that it would be hard, among these savages, for the conjugal tie to resist the sollicitations and courting of an European. A woman among the Hottentots, honoured by being overcome, considers her husband afterwards with a sort of haughtiness, and leaves him with contempt. The latter, on his part, is soon comforted, and allows himself to be easily appeased by trifling presents: but even this resource is of no use; and, as I have already mentioned, in consequence of the corruption of their original habits, they are much less susceptible of jealousy, and are far from being sensible of its madness.

The Gonaqua men pay much less attention to dress than the women do. It has been observed that in winter they

they wear their krofs with the woolly side next them, and that they turn it in hot weather. This indeed is possible, and a matter very indifferent in itself; but it does not however prevent their having one in summer quite free from wool, the preparation of which occasions a great deal of trouble. I have observed that the Gonaquas are taller than the Hottentots of the colonies, and that their kroffes are made of calves skins. One of these skins is rarely sufficient; and they commonly make it larger by adding to each side a piece which they stitch to it with thread made of intestines. This sewing is done in the same way as that of shoemakers; and, to bore the holes, these savages use an iron awl, when they can get it; but, when they cannot, they have one made of bone: those made of the leg bone of an ostrich, which is the hardest bone they have, are those upon which they place the highest value. There are two ways of freeing a krofs from hair: when the animal has been newly killed, and when the skin is yet fresh, they only wrap it up with the hair inwards, and leave it in this state for two days, which are sufficient to occasion a fermentation. When this begins, they pull off the hair, which in a manner drops of itself; and then, by rubbing, give the skin a kind of preparation. It is afterwards left for a complete day quite covered with leaves of the Hottentot fig-tree, well soaked and pounded; and when this is finished, the fibres, and all the fleshy parts that can be observed, are scraped away; till at length, by means of rubbing it with mutton grease, the krofs gets all the softness and flexibility of woven cloth. It may be readily observed that this process differs very little from that which furriers and tanners in Europe use; but, with whatever skill the Hottentots may prepare their furs and skins, they will never equal ours until they have passed through the hands of the perfumer.

If the skin is dry, and, whether it has been formerly used or not, it retains the hair; and if a Hottentot, for want of another, wishes to employ it as a krofs for summer, this labour needs more care, and it becomes much more tedious and particular. With the rib bone of a sheep he makes a kind of chisel, which must be made as sharp as they can; and this instrument, which answers

to detach the hair, must be managed with great care. It is not enough to shave the hair, it is likewise necessary that it should be pulled out by the roots; and that it bring the epidermis along with it, without hurting the texture of the skin. This work of patience needs extraordinary skill and a great deal of time. A Gonaqua, I again aver, has no other clothes but his kross and his jackal; and he always goes bareheaded, except when the weather is cold or rainy: in these cases, he has a cap made of leather. He wears a few glass beads, or ties a plume of feathers to his hair as ornaments. I have seen some who used, instead of this decoration, little pieces of leather cut into different shapes; and others, when they kill little birds, blow up their bladder, and fasten it like a tuft upon their foreheads.

The Gonaquas commonly wear sandals, which they fasten with leather thongs: they embellish their legs and arms also, though not quite so profusely as the women, their legs and arms with ivory bracelets, the whiteness of which pleases them; but they do not affix so great value on them as those made of large brass wire. They are so careful of the latter, and clean them so frequently, that they turn exceeding brilliant, and keep a most beautiful polish.

They are very fond of hunting; and in this they display great dexterity. They not only use gins and snares, which they place in convenient places to catch large animals, they lie in ambush for them likewise, attack them as soon as they see them, and kill them with their poisoned arrows, or their assagays. When an animal is wounded by the arrows, it instantly feels the effects of the poison, which coagulates its blood; and it frequently happens that an elephant, wounded in this way, falls at the distance of twenty or thirty leagues from the place where it got the deadly blow. As soon as an animal dies, they only cut away all the flesh near the wound, which they consider as dangerous; but the rest gets no injury from the force of the poison. I have often eaten the flesh of animals killed in this way, without feeling the slightest inconvenience; but I must confess that I would not run the same risque with animals which have retained the poison in their bodies for a considerable time.

At

At first sight of their arrows, one would not imagine them to be such destructive weapons as they are. They will neither fly so far, nor are they so long, as those which the Caribs use in America; but even their small size renders them so much the more dangerous, as it is not possible to perceive and follow them with the eye, and consequently to shun them. The most trivial wound which they inflict is always mortal, if the poison gets to the blood, and if the flesh be torn. The most certain remedy is to amputate the wounded part, if it be a limb; but if the wound be in the body, certain death follows.

Their arrows are made of reeds, and very curiously made. They are not more than eighteen inches, or at most two feet long; whereas those of the Caribs are six feet. By rounding a small bone three or four inches long, and less in diameter than the reed, these Hottentots drive it into one of the ends of the arrow, but without fastening it; on this account, when the arrow penetrates into any body, the rod may be extracted, but the bone continues in the wound; because it is armed with a little iron hook, fattened to one of its sides in such a particular manner, that by its resistance, and the new rents it makes in the flesh, it renders abortive all those means which art can devise to extract it. This bone also is dipped in a poison which has the consistence of mastich; and they often add to its point a little triangular piece of iron well sharpened, by which the weapon becomes still more terrible.

Every horde has a peculiar mode of mixing up their poisons, according to the various milky plants which grow in their neighbourhood, the dangerous juice of which they extract. They get some likewise from particular kinds of serpents; and these, for their activity, are those which are most in request by these savages, and which they prefer to every other kind, especially in their expeditions and battles. It is impossible to gain any certain information from them as to their manner of preparing that poison which they extract from the bodies of serpents: it is a secret which they so carefully hide, that all I can advance about it is, that it operates very quickly; and I often had opportunity to make experiments with it. I am however led to think that, this poison loses much
of

of its strength by age, although the trial made of it in the king's garden at Paris appeared otherwise, the success of which may be proved. But these poisons, as I have already mentioned, are not like one another: that which Mr Condamine brought with him, on his return from Peru, does not fix a law for all Africa. Besides, it is an experiment which might easily be repeated before men of science; since I have in my collection, besides other arms, a quiver filled with the arrows, which I took from one of the Boshmen Hottentots, during an action in which I preserved my own life at the expence of taking his.

Their bows are in proportion to their arrows, and are not more than two feet and a half long, or at most three feet: the string is made of intestines.

The assagay is in general a very slender weapon in the hands of a Hottentot; but, besides this, by its length it is not dangerous, for as it may be seen flying in the air, it is easily avoided. If the distance is more than forty paces, the person who throws it is far from sure of his aim, although the Hottentots can throw it much farther: it is only when closely engaged that it can be of any service. It has the same form as the lances of other countries; but as it is intended to be thrown at the enemy, or at animals, the wood of those which they use in Africa is much lighter and more slender, and continues turning gradually thinner to the end opposite to the iron point.

The design of these weapons is very little understood; for the warrior who uses them with the greatest dexterity is the soonest disarmed at same time. The Gonaquas, and all the other Hottentots, carry only one; and the embarrassment which they generally occasion, together with the little advantage reaped from them, sufficiently shew that they are not their favourite instruments of defence; which may justify the conclusion that bows and arrows are the natural and proper weapons of a Hottentot. I have seen some of them that shewed much address in throwing the assagay; but the greater number of them are quite unacquainted with it. This is not the case however with the Caffres, who have no other weapons of defence; but of them I shall speak afterwards.

These are the means for attack or defence used by some of the savage nations of Africa. They may perhaps occasion the indignation of an European, and lead him to tax these people with barbarity; but it must be kept in mind that the Europeans, before they were armed with that terrible thunder which in a moment causes so much devastation and ruin, had no other arms of defence, but those made of steel, and knew also the method of sending a twofold death to their enemy.

The Hottentots have not the smallest idea of the elements of agriculture; they neither sow nor plant, nor do they ever reap any crop. All that Kolben has advanced about their manner of cultivating the earth, of gathering in their corn, and of churning their butter, concerns the planters only, and the Hottentots engaged in their service. The savages drink their milk as nature produces it; and if they formed a taste for agriculture, tobacco and the vine tree would no question be the chief objects of their care: for smoking and drinking are their ruling pleasures; and all, whether old or young, married or unmarried, are much addicted to both of them.

When they are disposed to give themselves the trouble, they prepare an intoxicating liquor, of honey and a certain root, which they ferment in a proper quantity of water. This liquor, which is a sort of hydromel, is not their usual drink, nor do they ever keep a stock of it beside them. Whatever they prepare, they drink off at once, and frequently regale themselves in this way at particular times.

They smoke the leaves of a plant which they call *dag-ha*, and not *daka*, as some authors have advanced. This plant is not indigenous; it is the hemp of Europe. It is cultivated by some of the planters; and when they have dried the leaves, they sell them to the Hottentots, or exchange them for their oxen. Some of the savages prefer these leaves even to tobacco; but the greater part of them are fond of mixing them together.

They do not value European pipes so highly as those which they fabricate themselves; the former they think are too small. In making these pipes they use the bamboo reed, baked earth, or a softish kind of stone, which they cut and scoop out to a considerable depth, without
breaking

breaking it. They generally make them very large; for the more they contain, the more valuable they are. I have seen some, the skanks of which had an orifice of more than an inch wide.

The Gonaquas men do not employ themselves peculiarly in any kind of labour, to gratify the whims of others. The woman who inclines to lie softly, makes her own mats; the want of a dress makes them all tailors, and the hunter who is anxious to have sure weapons, depends only upon those which he prepares himself: in short, a lover is the only architect of the hut where he intends to conceal the charms of his female companion.

I must acknowledge that more intelligence and more art may be seen among other nations. The only utensils that are known in this country are made of a kind of earthen ware very brittle, and are almost all of the same shape. The Gonaquas seldom boil their meat, as they prefer it when roasted or broiled. Their pottery is used for the purpose of melting grease, which they afterwards keep in calabashes, which are bags made of sheep's skins, or in bladders.

Although they bring up plenty of sheep and oxen, they kill the latter, but seldom, except some accident happens to them, or old age has made them unfit for service. Their chief food, therefore, is the milk of their ewes and cows; besides which, they have the produce of their hunting excursions; and now and then they kill a sheep. In order to fatten their animals they use a process, which, though not practised in Europe, is no less effectual; and, has this singular advantage, that it needs no care. They bruise, between two flat stones, those parts which we take from them by the knife; and when thus bruised they get in time a vast bulk, and become a most delicious morsel, when they are determined to kill the animal.

The practice of breeding oxen for war is not used in this part of Africa. I saw no vestige of it in any of those places through which I passed. It is peculiar to the Grand Nimiquas; and I shall mention it when I come to speak of these people. The oxen which the Hottentots bring up are used merely for transporting their baggage, when they leave one place in order to establish themselves

in another; the remainder are used for procuring them necessaries by exchange.

The oxen which they mean for carrying burdens must be broke and trained very early to this labour; otherwise they would become quite untractable. For this reason, when the animal is still young, they pierce the cartilage which parts the nostrils, and thrust through the hole a bit of stick about eight or ten inches long, and nearly an inch in diameter. To fasten this stick, and to prevent it from dropping off, they secure it with a leathern thong, which is fixed to both its ends. This curb, which answers to stop and restrain the animal, is left in this position as long as it continues in life. When the ox has got to its full strength, or nearly so, they begin by accustoming it to endure a leathern girth, which they fasten closer from time to time, without hurting it; and they carry this to such a length, that any other animal with which the same precautions might not be used, would be suffocated by it, and instantly die. They then lay some light burthens upon it, such as hides, mats, &c.; and thus, by degrees and insensibly increasing the load, they make it fit to bear and retain on its back three hundred pounds weight and upwards; which is in no respect troublesome to it when upon a journey.

Their method of loading an ox is very simple. A man stands before the animal, lays hold of the thong fastened to the little stick which passes through its nostrils; and by this method the most furious animal becomes calm and peaceable. Some skins are thrown over its back to prevent its being hurt; and gradually as they lay on the effects of which the load is to consist, two robust Hottentots, standing one on each side, arrange and fasten them by a leather girth, which goes several times round it by passing under the animal's belly. These girths are often more than twenty yards long; and, to fasten them more closely every time it passes round the load, these men press their knees upon the animal's sides; while one sees, with no less surprise than pain, the poor brute, with its belly reduced to less than its customary size, support this torture, and march along with the greatest composure. The Hottentots, who are unacquainted with the use of horses, often ride on their oxen; and

and even in the colonies they are at times used by the inhabitants for the same purpose. The motion of an ox is very gentle, especially when it trots; and I have seen some of them, which, trained solely for riding, were not much inferior in speed to the swiftest horse.

To the women the task of milking the cows and ewes belong: and, as they never strike or hurt them, they are surprisingly tame; it is never necessary to tie them. It must be remarked that a cow in Africa never yields milk when her calf dies, or is taken from her: the Hottentots, therefore, carefully shun these misfortunes, which would make the mother of no use, and lessen their most valuable resource. The instinct which leads the cow to keep her milk until her calf has sucked her, is no less singular; but on these occasions the Hottentots have generally an easy way, however disgusting it may be. Whilst a woman, squatted on the ground, holds the animal's teat, another blows with extreme violence into her vagina; her belly then swells amazingly, so that she can no longer retain her milk, but lets it flow abundantly.

If a calf should die, they keep its skin very carefully, and with much address deceive the simple instinct of nature. They wrap it around the body of another calf; and, imposed on by this artifice, the mother continues to yield her milk: but this scheme seldom answers more than a month. It is real hurt to a proprietor when a calf dies; for, if it survives, the cow never ceases to yield milk till within six weeks of her bringing forth again.

The African cows are of quite the same species as those of Europe, and differ in no respect whatever; but, according as the different cantons are good or bad, they appear fatter or leaner. They commonly yield very little milk; those which produce three or four pints a day are considered as wonders. It would seem that milk, one of the most pleasant gifts of nature, becomes scarcer, and dries up almost wholly, the nearer we approach to the warmest countries. I recollect that at Surinam, which is not far from the Line, a cow which yielded three or four pints was accounted a miracle: what still tends to establish the truth of my assertion is, that even at the Cape, during the rainy season, when the atmosphere is at

the coolest, more milk is procured; and the contrary is the case in the warm weather. It is at that time likewise that the season most dangerous for these animals begins; and then they are subjected to four destructive maladies, which produces dreadful devastation among their flocks.

The first of them, they call at the Cape *lam-fikte*, which is a real palsy, and comes on suddenly; though the animal is fat, and apparently in perfect health, these animals are forced to remain in a lying posture, and they commonly die in fifteen days. As soon as the distemper makes its appearance, those which are still free from the infection are immediately sent out of the country; and, as there is no cure for this plague, the planters kill those attacked by it; and this they do with the greater readiness, as they have no dislike to eat the flesh of the diseased animal: above all, they make no difficulty to give it to their slaves and Hottentots, who are still less delicate in their taste.

The next disease, the *tong-fikte*, is a terrible swelling of the tongue, which then fills all the mouth and throat; and the animal is in constant danger of being suffocated. This disorder is more dismal in its consequences than the other, though it is not incurable; but the remedy for it is so little known, and so ill applied, that it is seldom successful. Those, therefore, which seem to be in a desperate situation, are slain, that their flesh and skins may not be lost likewise.

The *klaw-fikte* seizes oxen at the feet, causes them to swell prodigiously, and often occasions a suppuration: the hoof drops off; and when the animal walks, looking at it behind, it appears as if it wore slippers. It may readily be supposed that, while in this situation, great care is taken not to remove it from its place. It is, indeed, allowed to continue at rest as long as the malady continues: it is an inconvenience not attended with any risk, and which ends in a fortnight commonly.

But this, is far from the case with the *spong-fikte*, a terrible scourge among horned cattle, and very alarming to those of the hordes. This plague, which spares no kind, spreads speedy destruction; and he is lucky who does not lose by it the one half of his flock. It is a sort of leprosy, which may be communicated in an instant; and the
flesh

flesh of such animals as are seized with it, swells in a remarkable manner, and grows spongy and livid. One would say that it was bruised, and in a state of decomposition: it becomes filled with a reddish viscous humour; and is so disgusting, that the very dogs will not come near it. As soon as it is suspected that the first symptoms of this pestilence have made their appearance, if care has not been taken to remove the animals which are not yet infected, whatever health or strength they enjoy at the time, they cannot escape it.

These are the chief distempers which, by their periodical ravages, establish between the increase and the mortality of the cattle of Africa, a balance which prevents their prosperity, and without which these pastoral people, very moderate in their manner of living, would soon become powerful and wealthy.

Such sheep as the savages rear in the eastern parts are of a kind distinguished by the name of the *Cape sheep*. They are held in considerable reputation from the size of their tails; but this has been very much exaggerated: their common weight is not above four or five pounds. While I resided at the Cape Town, one of these animals was carried from house to house as a phenomenon, and yet its tail, though greatly admired, did not weigh above nine pounds and a half. It is merely a lump of fat, which has this singularity, that when melted it never gains the consistency of that which is found in other parts of the animal; it is a sort of congealed oil, which the Hottentots prefer to any other for their ointments, and for applying that powder which they call *boughou*. The planters use it in frying certain kinds of meat likewise. When mixed with other greasy substances, it turns as hard as butter, and is used for it, particularly in these cantons of the colony which are too dry for rearing cows. For this reason it is called, in the fertile parts of the country, in humour and by way of derision, the butter of this or that place: at the Cape, for instance, it is called the butter of *Swart-land*, a dry canton in which milk is very scarce.

The parched and burnt parts are fit only for rearing goats which are always of a fine breed. Their size differs according to the different cantons; but they are generally

nerally every where excellent, and yield as much milk as the cows. They bring forth young twice a year, like sheep; the latter for the most part produce two at once; but the goats three, and frequently four.

The Hottentots know nothing of hogs, and even the European planters dislike to breed them. I have however seen some of them in particular districts, where they are allowed to increase and to live unconfined. To catch them one must follow them, and kill them with a gun.

These people put no value on poultry; besides, they could not bring them up, were they anxious to do it; for, as they never sow, they have no sort of corn.

The roots which are principally used, are confined to a very small number. They never boil them, as they think them better when eaten raw; and indeed experience taught me that they are not mistaken in this.

The root which I liked best, called by the Hottentots *kamero*, is shaped like a radish, and is as big as a melon. It has a most sweet and pleasant taste, and is excellent for quenching thirst; a wonderful precaution of nature, in a scorching climate, where a person is in danger of perishing at every step; and where, at particular seasons, there is not a single spring at which one can drink. Though very general, this root is not easily got, because at the time of its perfect maturity, the leaves become withered, dry, and drop off; and to get it one must have noticed the spot before. But when somewhat acquainted with the country, people may soon learn to distinguish the places where it grows most commonly.

When overcome with the heat and fatigues of the day, with my mouth and throat parched, and my body sprinkled with sweat and dust, panting for breath, no friendly shade, and scarce able to bear my own weight, I wished to find some infectious marsh; and in that all my vows were centered—when my vain researches, and the unceasing intense heat of the sun, had at length deprived me of every hope—how often at such a time did I congratulate myself upon a precaution which more than one elegant Midas, from stories circulated without my consent, have turned into ridicule, as well as my cock; because, among other silly matters, for instance, finding water constantly in the Seine, they cannot understand why

why that river does not extend to the deserts of Africa, but is confined in its course to a very small portion of the earth; and how a person can die of thirst or hunger, when the markets in the capital are every where abundantly supplied with provisions of every kind—I say how much did I congratulate myself on possessing in my domestic animals, apparently the most useless, so excellent guards, and friends so very necessary to my preservation!

At these critical periods my faithful Kees never left me; and when we left our carriages, even for a little while, the force of his instinct soon led him to some of these plants: but as the tuft which no longer remained rendered all his tumbling useless, he dug up the earth with his fore paws. This resource however would have been far from gratifying his impatient avidity, had I not gone to his assistance with my poinard; and on such occasions we honestly divided the valuable fruit which he had found.

I got similar relief from two other roots of the size of one's finger, but very long. These roots were very sweet and tender; and, as they smelled somewhat like fennel and anise, I preferred them whenever I was so lucky as to find them: they are to be found in the colonies, where they are known, the one by the name of *anys-wortel*, and the other by that of *winkel-wortel*.

The rocky districts produce a sort of potatoes, which the savages name *kaa-nap*: it is irregularly shaped, and contains a milky juice remarkably sweet. To extract the milk there is nothing necessary but to suck this kind of pulp. I often attempted to boil it, but I always found it less valuable, as well as all the rest, because too quick a decomposition of the delicate substance which evaporates, alters its nature, and leaves what remains very insipid. Some other roots, when roasted among ashes like chestnuts, were very like them in taste. The wild fruits of this country are but few in number. I never saw any thing of the kind but a few shrubs, the berries of which were so execrable that they could have tempted none but children: thus our little ones, in the country, regale themselves nicely on the produce of the hedges that inclose our highways. Some of these wild fruits have a certain purgative quality, and are useful in no other way.

Although

Although I am not acquainted with more than one interesting part of natural history, I should have considered myself very blameable in climates so remote, and countries never before traversed, to lose any opportunity to study those new objects with which I saw myself always surrounded. I acknowledge that I was totally ignorant of botany; but I did not however neglect to make some researches even as to that science, which, though it neither speaks to the heart, nor conveys any idea to the mind, has for its object beneficence, and a desire of being useful to man. When I saw any bulbous plants or shrubs, the flowers and fruits of which drew my attention, I was very careful to get possession of them, and I preserved the seeds likewise. In my various encampments I had even improved so much, that I could compare different vegetable productions, and observe the relation which they bore to one another. This study, which I found a very agreeable one, gave me an opportunity of diversifying my amusements; and when I returned from one of my excursions to the Cape Town I had made a collection so valuable, that Mr Percheron, the French agent at the Cape, sent it, in my name, for the king's garden, addressed to that respectable family whose name I dare not mention; but whom Nature, by entrusting with her sweetest secrets, and committing to them the particular care of her hidden treasures, hath ranked among her greatest favourites. These plants however did not arrive at the place of their destination: I was told by the French agent that the vessel on board which they were, was lost at sea. I was more lucky with the drawings I had made, and which I brought home with me. An eminent botanist told me that he was entirely ignorant of the greater part of the plants which they represented. I shall publish them afterwards.

I now proceed to relations which are easier and within my reach, I mean those which concern my beloved Gonaquas.

Merely looking at these savages, it would be hard to guess at their age. Old people indeed look wrinkled, and the extremities of their hair are somewhat grey, but it never turns wholly white; and I presume that they are very old when seventy years of age.

The

The Gonaquas measure the year by the epochs of drought and rainy weather. This division is general with all the inhabitants of the tropical regions, and it is subdivided again into moons; but they never reckon the days if they exceed ten, that is to say the number of their fingers. Beyond that, they mark the day or the time by some remarkable event; for instance, an extraordinary storm, an elephant killed, an infectious distemper among the cattle, an emigration, &c. The various parts of the day they distinguish by the course of the sun; and they will tell you, pointing with their finger, he was *there* when I set out and *here* when I arrived. This method is by no means exact; but, notwithstanding its want of accuracy, it is almost sufficient for these people, who having no appointments of gallantry, no law-suits to attend, no perfidies to commit, no scandal to circulate, no occasion meanly to cringe before silly patrons, and no new play to damn, calmly see the sun finish his course, and are under very little concern whether twenty thousand clocks bring misery to one and happiness to another.

When at any time sick, besides the binding already mentioned, they have recourse to some medicinal plants with which by their common practice they are acquainted. There are some among them of more knowledge than others as to this, and whom they advise with; but as there is no science more secret than medicine, and as inward disorders do not speak to the eyes in a striking manner, they are very much at a loss how to treat them; they however impose as much as we do upon some victims by their grimace, and clearly evidence when the patient is dead, that his disease was incurable. They are more fortunate in dressing and treating wounds, and even in reducing luxations or fractures: it is very rare to see a Hottentot lame.

A feeling of delicacy in these savages makes them keep themselves retired from others when they are sick. They are then rarely seen, and it would seem that they are ashamed of being unheathy. It indeed never comes into the head of a Hottentot to expose himself in public in order to excite pity and procure relief; this is a forced method, but of no use in a country where every body is compassionate.

They

They have no notion of bleeding, nor of the advantage which accrues from it. I do not even imagine that there is a single person amongst them who would voluntarily submit to this operation; but, the Hottentots of the colonies, as they are acquainted with the European manners, they have also contracted their diseases and apply to their cures.

That operation which these physicians perform, of which the famous Kolben takes notice, and the habit which he ascribes to the Hottentots of the desert, of consulting the entrails of sheep, hanging the caul of the animal from the patient's neck, leaving it there to consume, and other fables of the same kind, were doubtless written for the vulgar, and tend at best to amuse the ignorant. Where there is no religion nor worship, it is impossible there can be superstition. It is still farther from the truth, that in the horde these pretended physicians sustain a rank above that of their priests. To be more exact, the Hottentots know neither physicians, distinction of rank, nor priests; and their language has no word to express any of these things by.

In order to understand to what lengths this visionary writer suffered himself to be misled by his imagination, we need only read in his book, that a Hottentot physician used Roman vitriol to cure a person attacked by the leprosy. How impossible is it that these savages should know any thing of this salt, which is not found in their country, since it is the production of a chymical operation? To give an air of probability to these absurdities, it would be necessary at least to suppose some knowledge amongst these people, and to lend them our arts, alembics, furnaces, and all our apparatus of pharmacy, to produce them.

Upon the death of a Hottentot, he is buried in his worst kross, and the limbs are laid in such a way that the body is completely covered. The relations then carry it to a certain distance from the horde, and laying it in a pit dug for this purpose, and which is never deep, they cover it first with earth, and then with stones, if any are to be got in the neighbourhood. Such a mausoleum proves but a very weak defence from the attacks
of

of the jackal and the hyæna: the body indeed is generally soon dug up, and eaten by these animals.

Although this last duty is badly discharged, the Hottentots are not much to be blamed, when we call to recollection the funeral ceremonies of the ancient and celebrated Persis, still attached to the habit of exposing their dead on the tops of high towers, or in open cemeteries, that the crows and the vultures may feed upon them, and carry them away by piece-meals.

A Hottentot, respectfully depositing in the earth the lifeless remains of his father or his friend, leaves to the salts, and dissolving juices which they contain, the care of decomposing the body quietly and at leisure: if he is not always successful as he would wish, and if he does not find the ashes of what was most dear to him, he is buried in grief, and by his lamentations sufficiently evinces his affectionate disposition, and the great humanity of his mind.

When the chief of a horde dies, their religious ceremonies are more numerous; that is to say, the heap of stones and earth, under which he lies buried, is large, and more visible.

When the deceased was a person highly esteemed, the family are in great grief and distress; the night is spent in cries, and howlings, intermixed with imprecations against death; while the friends who join them augment this noise, which, at a distance, one would suppose to be the intoxication of joy, or the shrieks of despair. The signs of their grief are not however equivocal to those who live among them: I have seen some of them shed bitter tears, and in great plenty.

Dr Sparrman relates his having been witness to a scene in the colonies, which he tells in the following way: "Two old women shook and beat with their fists one of their countrymen, who was either dying or already dead, while they loudly poured forth reproaches, or consoling expressions, close to his ear." We must not permit ourselves to be imposed on by a tale of this nature. Had these women been satisfied that the young man was dead, they would have doubtless expressed their affection without that shaking and those blows: but these motions, which the Doctor supposes to be the convulsive a-

gitations of despair, were merely a method of supplying the want of spirituous liquors, which people use in Europe, to clear up a very difficult doubt, and which the Hottentots are deprived of. The extreme agitation, used by the two old women, is an efficacious remedy which has good effects, since Dr Sparrman adds, that it revived the patient.

The small pox, which has so frequently ravaged the kraals of the Hottentots in the colonies, never appeared but once among the Gonaquas. As this disease swept away at that time more than the half of their people, they are so much afraid of it, and it fills them with such horror, that, on the first news of its breaking out in the colonies, they leave every thing, and fly to the bosom of the deserts. Miserable then is the situation of those whom they are suspicious to be infected. Satisfied that there is no remedy for this dreadful plague, whether it be a parent, wife, or child, that is sick, the voice of nature becomes silent. They leave them to their unhappy fate, so that they die of hunger, if not by the violence of the disease.

This dread, so natural to a savage people, is in no respect repugnant to that sincere affection and purity of manners by which they are remarkable. The picture of the destruction of their hordes, always before them, is a sufficient motive to lead them for a moment to forget the most sacred duties; but it is shocking to read in old writers, and to hear a modern traveller repeat after them, that the Hottentots, when they take it into their heads to leave their dwelling, abandon, without pity and without regret, their old men, and every thing that is of no use to them, or which might tend to retard their march. This assertion must not be adduced as a rule, or a general practice: unless they find themselves in such fatal and urging circumstances as that which I have just now mentioned, or in time of war, what motives could cause them hasten rather than retard their journey? Besides, I can never suffer myself to imagine that a Hottentot can act in this manner without for a long time experiencing the most sincere regret.

When an enemy attacks them superior in number, and when they cannot repel force by force, they disperse
and

and hide themselves in the best way they can; and this is the only rational method that they can follow. When the enemy takes them by surprise, they are compelled, much against their inclination, to leave behind them their old people, their sick, and such stragglers and others as cannot accompany them. Where is the man so little acquainted with the disastrous consequences of war, as to make it criminal in a Hottentot to yield to a necessity, under which even an European would be compelled to bend?

But I will still go farther, and I do not hesitate to say all that I know. The savages always have recourse to the same expedient in time of famine—a misfortune no less terrible than the small pox and war, when they are attacked by it. In this case, deserting a few individuals, whom indeed they could not preserve, becomes a sacrifice absolutely necessary for the preservation of the whole: even those who fly are not clear that they will avoid the general scourge. More than three fourths of them perish by the way, in the midst of the sands and the rocks, racked by thirst, and pinching hunger; while the few that stand it out are obliged to make long marches before they can get the least assistance.

These are three inducements which lead the Hottentots to commit a barbarity to which they find themselves obliged by a force superior to affection or a sense of duty. In fearful and simple hearts nature can do nothing: but though its influence be suspended for a little, it is no less powerful or great; and public calamities, among people ignorant of the combinations of our arts, and who have no method to alleviate them but by a sudden flight, ought not to be the touchstone by which we try them, nor the rule by which we are to judge of them.

Those unavoidable emigrations, to which they are forced by the difference of the seasons, will not, I expect, be brought as a fourth example of their barbarity. When a remarkable drought has dried up all the springs as well as the surrounding lakes, when a scorching sun has withered the pastures, or when an infectious distemper rages among the cattle in the neighbourhood, either of these causes compels them to change their habitation; but this necessary removal is always made with the great-

est ease, and without confusion, though with all possible haste. They first send off their flocks, and then place the old and infirm on the backs of the oxen; no body is left behind; the valuable effects are placed first; and all peaceably pursuing their journey, build huts, and establish themselves in the first place that appears to be suitable to their manner of living, and to their wants. I have often fallen in with hordes who had been obliged to quit their residence for some of the above reasons, and I always found that they were accompanied by the old and the sick. How often, by means of a few rolls of tobacco, and still more by a few glasses of brandy, which revived these poor savages, and cheered up their countenances with a smile, have I had the satisfaction to see them shed tears of gratitude! and when separating from them, and pursuing my route, I came the same or following day to the spot they had left, though I examined all the neighbourhood with the greatest care, I found no vestiges of that insensibility with which they have been accused. All the huts had been carried with them, and their property and domestic animals had gone along with them.

Their children, and, next them, the nearest relations of the deceased, take possession of whatever they leave; but the quality of a chief is not hereditary. He is always constituted Chief by the horde, and his power is very limited. Though he has power sufficient to enable him to do good to any person he pleases, he has no power to do mischief; he wears no external mark of distinction, and enjoys no privilege above the rest, except that of being freed from going in his turn, according to custom, to keep the flocks in the fields. In their councils, his advice prevails, if it be thought a good one; if not, no regard is paid to it. When they are about to go to war, they know neither rank nor divisions, neither generals nor captains; all are either soldiers or colonels. Every one attacks or defends in his own way; the most intrepid march in the van; and, when victory is declared, they do not bestow upon one man the honour of an action which has been successful by the courage of all; it is all the nation that excel.

Of any nation whom I have ever seen, the Gonaquas are the only people that can be considered as *free*; but they

they will perhaps be soon obliged to remove to a greater distance, or receive laws from the Dutch government. As all the land to the eastward is generally good, the planters attempt to extend their possessions in that quarter as much as they can; and their avarice will doubtless one day succeed. Misery must be then the lot of these happy and peaceable people; and every vestige of their liberty will be rooted out by massacres and invasions. Thus have all these hordes which old authors mention been treated; and, by being often disunited and weakened, they are now reduced to a state of total dependance on the Dutch. The very existence of the Hottentots, their names, and their history, will therefore through time be accounted fabulous; unless some traveller, who may have curiosity enough to lead him to discover their remains, should have spirit enough to penetrate into the remote deserts where the great Nimiquas dwell, where rocks more and more hardened by time, and old and barren mountains, do not yield a single plant sufficient to engage the attention of the speculative botanist.

These tribes which are mentioned by Kolben, by the names of the *Gunjemans* and the *Koopmans*, never existed but in his imagination.

That of *Gunjemans*, which means nothing in the language of the Hottentots, must have been corrupted by some foolish traveller who wrote it improperly. The name should be *Good-mans*, which is composed of two Dutch words signifying good men, or good people; a qualification which is given by the first planters to all the Hottentots in general, because they saw they were peaceable and obliging.

That of *Koopmans* was likewise given to those who first traded by barter. These two words mean, in very good Dutch, a merchant or dealer; but they are no more applicable to one nation than to another. Thus the traveller, not understanding the languages of those countries which he travels through, retains their expressions imperfectly, writes them still worse, and gives the name of a savage horde from a barbarism. The manners of distant nations, and every thing concerning them, can never be accurately mentioned, unless one can speak different languages.

Had those authors, for instance, who have alledged that the Hottentots worship the moon, understood the meaning of the words which they chant whilst she shines, they would have observed that they address neither prayers, invocations, nor homage to that peaceful luminary. They would have understood that the subject of these songs is always something that has happened between them and the adjacent horde; and that, in the same way as the negroes do, they can sing a complete night on one subject, by repeating the words a thousand times over. They prefer night to day for this end, because it is cooler, and incites dancing and merriment.

When they wish to indulge this amusement, they join hands, and make a circle of greater or less extent, according to the number of male and female dancers, who are always intermixed with a sort of symmetry. When this chain is formed, they turn round from one side to the other, parting at certain intervals to note the measure; and from time to time clap their hands without interrupting the cadence, while with their voices they accompany the sound of the instruments, and constantly chant *boo, boo!* This is the common burden of their song. Now and then one of the dancers leaving the circle, goes to the middle, and there forms alone a few steps after the manner of the English; all the beauty and merit of which consist in doing them with the same quickness and exactness, without stirring from the spot where he stands. After this they all let go each other's hands; follow one another carelessly, with an air of terror and melancholy, their heads inclining to one shoulder, and their eyes cast down towards the ground, which they look at with attention; and in an instant after they break forth in the liveliest demonstrations of joy, and the most extravagant merriment. They are highly delighted with this contrast, when it is well performed. All this in the main is but an alternate assemblage of very droll and amusing pantomimes. It must be noticed that the dancers make a hollow and monotonous kind of humming, which never ceases but when they join the spectators, to sing the wonderful chorus *boo, boo!* which seems to be the life and soul of this magnificent music. They commonly conclude with a general ball; that is to say, the ring is broken,

ken, and they all dance in confusion, as each inclines ; and on this occasion they display all their agility and strength. The expertest dancers repeat, by way of defiance to one another, those dangerous leaps and musical quivers of our grand academies, which excite laughter as deservedly as the *boo boo* of Africa.

The instruments which are most esteemed by reason of their excellence are the *goura*, the *joum-joum*, the *rabouquin*, and the *romelpot*.

The *goura* is formed like the bow of a savage Hottentot ; it is of the same size ; and a string made of intestines, fastened to one of its ends, is kept at the other by a knot in the barrel of a quill, which is flattened and cleft. This quill being displayed, forms a very long isosceles triangle, about two inches long ; and at the bottom of this triangle the hole is made that keeps the string fast, the end of which, drawn back, is tied at the other end of the bow with a very thin leathern thong : this cord may be stretched so as to have a greater or less degree of tension, according as the musician pleases ; but when two or three *gouras* play together, they are never in unison. Such is the first instrument of the Hottentots, which one would not imagine to be a wind instrument, though it is certainly of that sort. Its figure may be seen in the eighth plate, by the side of a Hottentot. It is held almost in the same way as a huntsman's horn, with that end where the quill is fixed towards the performer's mouth, which he applies to it, and either by aspiration or expiration draws from it very melodious tones. The savages, however, who are most successful on this instrument, can play no regular tune ; they only emit certain twangs, like those drawn in a particular manner from a violin or a violincello. I took much pleasure in seeing one of my attendants, called *John*, who was accounted an adept, for whole hours together amuse his companions, who, transported and ravished, interrupted him very frequently by exclaiming, " Ah ! how charming that is ! " begin that again." John began again ; but his second performance had no resemblance to the first : for, as I have mentioned, these people cannot play any regular tune with this instrument, the tones of which are only the effect of chance, and of the quality of the quill. The
best

best quills are those taken from the wings of a certain species of bustard; and whenever I happened to kill one of these birds, I was always solicited to make a small sacrifice for the support of our orchestra.

When a woman plays the *goura*, its name is altered merely because she changes the manner of using it, and it is then transformed into a *joum-joum*. Seated on the ground, she places it perpendicularly before her, in the same way as a harp is held in Europe: by putting her foot between the bow and the string, being careful not to touch the latter, she keeps it firm in that position. With the right hand she grasps the middle of the bow; and, while she blows with her mouth on the quill, she strikes the string in different places with a small stick five or six inches long, which she holds in the other. This produces a little variety in the modulation; but the instrument must be brought close to the ear, before one can catch distinctly all the degradations of the sound. This manner of holding the *goura* struck me much, particularly as it greatly increased the graces of the woman who performed on it.

The *rabouquin* is a three-corned piece of board, with three strings made of intestines, supported by a bridge, which may be stretched at pleasure by means of pegs, like those of our European instruments; it is indeed nothing but a guitar with three strings. Any other but a Hottentot might perhaps produce some music from it, and render it pleasant: but he is contented with stamping it with his fingers; and this he does without order or art, and even without design.

The *romelpot* makes the most noise of all the instruments of these savages. It is made of a piece of the trunk of a tree hollowed, over one of the ends of which they stretch a sheep's skin well tanned; on this the performer beats with his hands, or, to speak more properly, with his fists, and at times even with a stick. This instrument, the sound of which may be heard at a very great distance, is by no means a masterly invention; but in every country it is customary to supply with noise what cannot be executed with taste.

I have probably been too prolix on the dances and different instruments of the Hottentots. The latter, as may be

be easily perceived, are not very curious; but this detail, which in some degree tends to elucidate the manners of these savages, must not be neglected.

Coming very near to Nature, and under her immediate direction, the savages have no need of our noisy and most harmonious orchestras to excite them in their festivals to the liveliest demonstrations of mirth and joy. The confined and monotonous modulation of their music is enough; and I fancy, that even without it they would caper fully as well.

A late writer in his *Course of Geographical Lectures*, who has laid it down as a rule to study men at the same time that he describes places, remarks, with great sagacity, "That in a polished state dancing and singing are two arts; but that in the bosom of the forests they are almost natural signs of concord, friendship, tenderness, and pleasure. We learn under masters," adds this author, "to command our voice, and to move our limbs in cadence; the savage has no other instructor but his own passions, his own heart, and Nature. What he feels we pretend to feel; the savage therefore who dances or sings is always happy."

I have already remarked that the Hottentots never meet for amusement but in the night, as their daily occupations leave them no other time. A particular duty belongs to each, which must be executed: some must continually watch the flocks which are scattered through the fields, not only to hinder them from straying, but to protect them from the attacks of ravenous beasts, which are always lying in wait for them; others must keep them clean, and milk them twice a day; some must weave mats, and gather dry wood for their evening fires; and others must provide food, and search for roots. These last employments belong chiefly to the women; whilst the men, on their part, go a hunting, inspect the snares which have been laid in different places, and form arrows, and all the other instruments which they need. Though these instruments, and all those works which come from their hands, are in general coarse and clumsy, they employ a good deal of time and pains, because there are a number of tools necessary for shortening their labour

labour which they have not ; their ingenuity is much less surprising than their patience.

It would have seemed remarkable had these people whom I so often frequented, and amongst whom I lived so long, been cunning or artful enough to conceal their character from me so much, that I should never have seen, either in their conduct or manner of life, any sign or act of superstition. It would be exceedingly improper to consider as religious practices certain duties which they impose on themselves, and which seem altogether natural and simple, when one is at the trouble of examining them thoroughly. For instance, they rarely ever eat the flesh of the hare, or of the antelope called *duykers*. In their view, the one is an ugly and disgusting animal, and the flesh of the other they consider as too black ; besides, these two animals are always very lean, which to them is a good reason for rejecting it. But a striking evidence that they deprive themselves of this resource from no chimerical idea, is that, in times of famine, I have seen them think themselves very happy in being able to procure it. Because a Dutchman would be disgusted at the sight of a plateful of those snails which are got on vines, or of frogs, however well dressed——whilst a Frenchman can make a hearty dinner on these victuals, which are far from being delicacies——does it follow that a Batavian's dislike ought to be considered as a religious abstinence enjoined by the consistory ?

Before I fix as an essential custom of the Hottentots the practice of cutting off a joint either of a finger or a toe, and before I ascribe to the same cause their semi-castration, it is but fair to settle the truth of these two ceremonies. Kolben heard them mentioned in the same manner as he did many other matters, but he never got certain information about them. This he evidently shews, when he ascribes them to all the Hottentots without distinction ; which is equally untrue with the other assertions of that writer. Dr Sparrman falls also into a very remarkable mistake, when he advances, in opposition to Kolben, that semi-castration is no where in use. These two practices are actually in use among two hordes which lie to the north of the Cape, under the twenty-eighth degree of south latitude, viz. the *Geissiquas* and the *Koragwas*,

guas, in whose country I saw the giraffes, which I shall take notice of in my second voyage. The philosophic Kolben assuredly never travelled so far, except in his fancy.

Dr Sparrman has beyond question been deceived about the Gonaquas, when he is led to believe that these hordes practise circumcision. The planters certified this to me as well as to him; and for this very reason I found a powerful inclination to doubt the truth of it: but having since that time had better opportunities than any one else of satisfying myself about so important a fact, I declare, on the contrary, that this nation, and all the Hottentots indiscriminately, have the prepuce of a very large size; a mark which sufficiently distinguishes them from all other savages, and which certainly has not been attended to before.

The case is the same as to that disgusting apron of the Hottentot women, which has long made a conspicuous though a ridiculous figure in history, or rather in the fables of the vulgar. Another whim, always arising from the same source, has as rashly suppressed it; though it is still fashionable among a certain horde, whom I shall soon have occasion to mention. I say it is fashionable; for, instead of being a natural gift, it ought to be considered as one of the most monstrous refinements that ever was invented by I know not what coquetry, altogether peculiar to a certain small corner of the globe.

Some old writers have alledged that the families of the savages sleep promiscuously in the same hut; and put no difference between age, nor that invincible horror which separates persons allied by blood. The savages indeed, confined to what is strictly necessary, have at no time thought of preserving, under an apparent decency, all the turpitude of unnatural inclinations; and separate apartments for brother and sister, mother and son, are not in use among them. But to infer, because they have only one habitation, one bed, and one mat to lie on, after the labours of the day, that they live like brutes, would be to calumniate innocence, and offer violence to nature. There is only one ill-informed or malevolent writer who has allowed himself to give credit to these infamous suspicions—Yes, all the family dwell in the same hut; the father lies by his daughter's side, and the mother by her son;

son; but at day break each gets up with a pure heart, and without having occasion to blush before the Author of all Beings, or any of the creatures whom he has stamped with the seal of his own image. A savage is neither brute nor barbarian: the real monster is the man who searches for crimes every where, because he imagines them; and who asserts their existence on the hateful evidence of his own mind.

I have lived among more than one horde of savages; and I never in any of them saw what was immodest, but on the contrary, reserve amongst the women, and I may add among the men likewise. Kolben whom I have so often contradicted speaks truth once, when he acknowledges that people would judge very erroneously, were they to believe that, because the savages walk naked, they have as little modesty as veil; and that it was with great difficulty he could find men who, even by the temptation of presents, would agree to throw aside their jackals, that he might have ocular proof whether they were or were not circumcised.

It has already been mentioned that too much intercourse with the whites has debased and corrupted their manners; and the truth of this assertion the Hottentots of the colonies are a striking proof: those of the desert, are in no respect different in nature, and may perhaps yield one day to seduction, should it happen to go their length, and will suffer themselves to be seduced by the influence of example. When Dr Forster, in his *Voyage round the World* with Captain Cook, mentions that the women of Easter Isles were *lascivious courtezans*, he does not conceal from us that the sailors gave themselves up openly and without shame to the most infamous debauchery with them; but we ought to add, without any hesitation, that the females of savage nations, once visited by corrupted Europeans, and too well acquainted with their perverse lusts, prostitute themselves to all those who choose to enjoy them, and gratify their inclinations, no doubt from a dread of the horrid cruelties which the whites are very capable to commit upon them.

In every place where a desire of information led me to enter upon this subject with such women as I fell in with in the course of my travels, I always got one simple
and

and uniform answer, which they make to all who, suspect them of incestuous cohabitation, wish to be satisfied by their own acknowledgment: "You compare us then to brutes," said they to me; "for brutes only are capable of doing what you say."

I trust I am not deceived—I believe in virtue, for the sake of those even who are ignorant of that word, and who have never written voluminous commentaries on the idea it carries. This sentiment, innate in the heart of man when uncorrupted by education and example, was given him as a mark of his dignity and distinction. Horror at the idea of connection with his own blood, is one of the grandest characteristics by which the Creator wished to distinguish the human species from animals; and this insurmountable barrier can be disregarded by the most infamous depravation only.

I dare aver, then, that if there is a corner of the globe where a decency of conduct and manners is still respected, we must look for its temple in the heart of the deserts. These principles the savage receives neither from prejudice nor education; he is indebted to nature for them: in him love is a very confined wish, and he does not turn it as in civilized countries, into an irregular passion, which carries disorder and destruction along with it. In vain should I attempt, after the example of Buffon, to eradicate this fever of the mind, this disease of exalted imaginations. I shall not demolish an altar loaded with the rich gifts of poets and romance writers; I should have too weighty opponents to combat: and the divinity who owes his birth to such beautiful conceptions, would let loose his votaries against me, nor ever forgive me for this impiety and sacrilege.

A physiognomist, or, if it please my reader better, a modern wit, would entertain his company by giving the Hottentot, in the scale of beings, a place between man and the ourangoutang. I cannot however admit of this systematic arrangement; the qualities which I esteem in him will never allow him to be degraded so far; and I have found his figure sufficiently beautiful, because I tried the goodness of his heart. It must indeed be confessed that there is something peculiar in his features, which in a certain degree distinguishes him from the generality

of mankind. His cheek bones are remarkably prominent; so that his face being very broad in that part, and the jaw bones on the contrary very narrow, his visage continues still decreasing even to the very point of the chin. This configuration gives him a look of great lankness, which gives his head the appearance of being very much disproportioned, and too small for his full and corpulent body. His flat nose rises scarcely half an inch at its greatest height, and his nostrils, which are excessively wide, often exceed in height the ridge of his nose. His mouth is large, with small teeth, well enamelled and perfectly white: his eyes, very beautiful and open, inclining a little towards the nose, like those of the Chinese: and to the appearance and feeling his hair has the resemblance of wool; it is very short, curls naturally, and is as black as ebony in colour. He has little hair, yet he takes no small pains in pulling out by the roots part of what he has; but the natural thinness of his eye-brows saves him from this trouble in that part. Though he has no beard but upon his upper lip, under the nose, and at the point of the chin, he never neglects to pluck it out as soon as it is visible. This gives him a womanish look; which, added to the natural mildness of his character, destroys that commanding fierceness common to all men in a natural state, and which has acquired them the proud title of kings.

As to proportion of body, a Hottentot is as perfect as if formed in a mould. His gait is graceful and agile; and all his motions, which are easy, are very different from those of the American savages, who seem only to have been sketched out by the hand of Nature.

The women have more delicate features, and exhibit the same characteristic marks in their air and gait: they are equally well proportioned. Their breasts, admirably placed, have a most beautiful shape, while in the bloom of youth; and their hands are small, and their feet remarkably well shaped, though they never wear sandals. The sound of their voice is soft; and their words passing through the throat, are not destitute of harmony. When they speak, they use a great many gestures, which give force and gracefulness to their arms.

The

The Hottentots, are naturally timid, consequently are by no means an enterprising people. Their phlegmatic coolness, and their serious countenances, give them an air of reserve, which they never lay aside, even at the most joyful moments; while, on the other hand, all other black or tawny nations give themselves up to pleasure with the liveliest joy, and without any confinement.

An insuperable indifference to the affairs of life leads them very much to inactivity and indolence; the superintending of their flocks, and the care of procuring a livelihood, are the only objects which occupy their attention. They never follow hunting as sportsmen, but like people oppressed and famished by hunger. In short, forgetting the past, and under no uneasiness as to the future, they are struck only with the present moment; and it is that which alone occupies their attention.

They are however the best, kindest, and most hospitable of people. Whoever travels among them may be certain of food and lodging; and though they will receive presents, yet they never seek any thing. If the traveller has a long journey to perform, and if they learn from the information he requires that there are no hopes of his falling in with other hordes, that which he is going to leave supply him with provisions as far as their circumstances will admit, and with every thing else necessary for prosecuting his journey, and reaching the place of his destination.

Before Europeans arrived at the Cape, the Hottentots knew nothing about commerce, and perhaps they had no idea even of barter; but, on the appearance of tobacco and toys, they were soon initiated into part of the mercantile mysteries. These objects, which at first were merely agreeable novelties, by length of time have become necessities. When these articles turn scarce among them, they are supplied by the Hottentots of the colonies; for it is necessary to observe, that however eager they are to get such trifles into their possession, they do not take the trouble to stir one step in search of them themselves, and they choose rather to do without them: an useful lesson to those who drag out a miserable life in continual distress by pursuing imaginary wants.

In this light did these people appear to me, in all the innocence of manners, and a pastoral life. They excite also the idea of mankind in a state of infancy. A noble action, which I shall mention here, though connected with my second voyage, more to the northward of the Cape, and towards the western coast, will conclude the picture I have attempted to trace out with the utmost candour and truth—without eloquence, I confess, but without enthusiasm, without vain declamation, and with that natural sincerity which is so valuable to me, and which I embrace every opportunity to profess.

A very considerable horde of the Kaminouquas came to visit my camp, with that confidence which honest and upright intentions always occasion, and which all those men possess who have never been corrupted by their intercourse with other nations. Being obliged to be careful of my provisions, it was impossible for me to regale all these people with brandy; there were too many of them; and I could not, without imprudence, shew myself generous. I however desired a glassful to be given to the chief, and to each of those who by their appearance, or rather by their age, seemed to be the most respectable. But to what resources and to what expedients will not beneficence have recourse! and how great is its ingenuity, when it wishes to diffuse its blessings! I was very much surprised when, perceiving that they kept the liquor without swallowing it, I saw them all come up to their companions, who had received no share, and distribute it to them with their mouths, in the same way as the tender birds of heaven feed their young ones with their bills. This unexpected action, I acknowledge, threw me into great agitation, and I remained astonished: for, on the sight of this affecting scene, what heart is there so unnaturally hardened as would not have diffused into tears? filled with respect and admiration, and moved to the very bottom of my soul, I threw myself into the arms of the chief, who like the others had just divided his liquor with those who surrounded him, and I bedewed his venerable person with my tears. Ye gaudy prattlers, ye elegant coquettes, perfumed with amber and musk, laugh as ye please, and shew your charming grimaces! Complaints of the stomach, vapours, and all the evils of debilitated

litated health, the usual effects of a debauched life worn out at the age of thirty, created no disgust to my divine Kaminouquas, in this sweet and brotherly communication.

I can never recollect without being moved these respectable people, and several others, among whom I noticed the same ceremony repeated. When I saw them, on their leaving me, return peaceably and contented, "Happy mortals!" exclaimed I; "long may you retain your valuable innocence, but live in ignorance! Poor savages, never regret that you were born under a scorching sun, on a dry and barren soil, which scarcely yields briars and thorns. Consider your present situation rather as a blessing from Heaven: your deserts will never tempt the avarice of the whites. Unite yourselves to those fortunate hordes, who like you have not had an opportunity of knowing them; destroy and efface the least vestiges of that yellow dust which is converted into metal in your caverns and rocks—ye are ruined if they find it. Know that it is the scourge of the world, the source of all crimes: and dread, above all things, the approach of an Almagro, a Pizarro, a Cortez, and of the bloody stole of the Vanverdes."

When uncivilized man is naturally good; why then should the Hottentot be an exception to this universal rule? It is not just to charge him with cruelty; he alone is revengeful. Too sensible of the evil done him, what can be more natural than to repel force by force? It becomes us well to enjoin the children of nature to follow our fictitious virtues, when their names are scarcely known among us, and no one undertakes to follow what they prescribe. Even the law of retaliation, the only one in use before we dreamed about being philosophers, what else is it but the right of doing injury for injury, and of taking away the lives of those who do not hesitate to attempt ours?

Were the savages of Africa or America to take it into their heads, one day, that they live miserable, deprived of our arts, riches, and all the resources of our genius; and, joining together in arms, should hasten to inundate Europe, and to drive us from our possessions, with what face could we receive these barbarians, and by what suf-

ferings on our part would they see their boldness rewarded? Such however is their history, or ours; such have been our enterprises attempted in three quarters of the world too successfully. In every quarter where we have thought proper to establish ourselves, we have obliged these unhappy wretches, persecuted to a state of slavery, to betake themselves to flight; we have appropriated as our own, without hesitation, whatever we found useful to us; and when the hour of vengeance has been proclaimed for them, and when they measured their blows by the extent of their injuries, without reviewing our own conduct, and too much infatuated by interest or fanaticism, we have dared to title them barbarians, eaters of men, and ferocious animals, who live by murder, and allay their thirst with human blood.

To what misconduct must we attribute the death of that illustrious navigator Captain Cook?—I am led to think that a consciousness of his own strength, and his bold and enterprising character, never induced him to commit any of those criminal excesses to which he in his turn fell a victim; but the anxious desire of the undisciplined crew that followed him, made the islanders take up arms against him. Those sailors made free with the women, and they even dared to lay hands upon them whenever an opportunity offered. This was too much for them to be any longer silent; nothing could stop these incensed savages. The commander is perceived through the smoke of cannon, and amidst the noise of threatening artillery; they lay hold of him; and he is massacred, even before the eyes of his soldiers, because he did not repress their disorders in time.

Confidence is the first sentiment with which people who travel among savages ought to inspire them: one must be kind and humane to gain theirs; must never threaten them, or take advantage of their weakness; and must never seem terrified in their sight: when nothing is required from them, they will grant every thing. People ought to have so much command over their passions as to observe the strictest continence, and not to seek after their women. If they are jealous of you, they will become implacable enemies; if they are not, their condescension
with

with regard to you, in this respect, places them too much on a level, and you lose in their eyes that useful superiority by which they were at first dazzled. Though this passion should not be general, there are constantly some individuals tormented by it; and it is justly observed that the nations least subject to it are the most dissolute in their manners, and nature is farthest removed from them.

To make yourself known to the savages with advantage, superiority of strength ought to be the last thing which you make use of; for it is unnatural for mankind to be suspicious of those whom they do not fear. However, in following these precautions, people should preserve a calm and serene air; and when they travel among them never to employ their arms, or shew for what use they are, but in order to do them a service, either by procuring them game, or destroying such wild beasts as are enemies to their flocks. After this you may quit a horde in perfect security, certain of leaving regret behind you; and gratitude will constantly recal you to their remembrance. Many among them will separate from you with reluctance; they will leave their companions to accompany you; and will conduct you to another horde, among whom, from the favourable testimony given of you by your guides, you may be assured of meeting with the same love, the same desire to serve you, the same entertainments, and all that hospitable care which always proceeds from confidence. With these peaceful principles so agreeable to my disposition, I travelled over a small part of an immense quarter of the globe; and I might have traversed the whole of Africa in the same manner, if I had not been stopped by insurmountable obstacles, which all my zeal could not overcome, and which it would be needless to give an account of here.

It was likewise from these maxims that I was daily more and more assured that a traveller cannot associate any one with him in such an enterprize, without running the hazard of rendering it abortive. I was certain of my own manner of viewing dangers, and of the means I had to guard against them. Being surrounded by friends and people equal in power, in dangerous situations, I could not have flattered myself with the hopes of inducing them all to follow my opinion; the foolish obstinacy of
one

one might have occasioned the destruction of all: but, if I deceived myself, I had only my own judgment to reproach.

The Hottentots are represented as a miserable and poor people, superstitious, ferocious, indolent, and extremely dirty; in a word, they are vilified in every possible manner. Were there in these assertions even one that approached truth, it would be better, in order to stop extravagant exaggeration, to adhere simply to the tales, already so absurd, of those tiresome planters, who constantly delight in deceiving a stranger by things which the latter is in hopes of receiving instruction from, whilst listening to them. It is from their own experience people ought to speak, and advance nothing more than what they have seen. Had these maxims been adhered to in such a work as that of Dr Sparrman, for instance—a work valuable in several respects—interesting observations, well written, would not have been inundated with a deluge of very apocryphal relations of hunting lions, elephants, &c.; each more ridiculous and improbable than another. He would not then have mentioned a licorn, delineated perhaps by a planter upon some uninhabited rock; and he would not have given a square in the room of a round form to the huts of the Caffres whom he never visited. I must allow, in favour of this learned man, that his candour and probity made him look upon every thing as incontestable, the moment it was certified to him by any of the planters. Particularly John Kock, whom he calls the most accurate and judicious observer he ever knew, without doubt never expected that great deal of praise which he has lavished upon him; while the inhabitants of the whole town and colony refute them, and do not scruple only, on account of these errors, to rank next to Kolben's a book which would have been of great use, had the author confined himself to such objects as were familiar to him.

When I find truth in Dr Sparrman I pay respect to it; and I lay to the charge of his observer those falsehoods which disgust me: but when either the one or the other assure us, “that he never saw the savages wipe or clean
“their skin; that, to scour their hands, they rub them
“with cow dung; that they rub also their arms with it,

“as

“ as far as the shoulders ; that this unction, which is not
“ necessary, is intended merely for ornament ; and that
“ the dust and the dirt mixing with their greasy oint-
“ ment, and the sweat of their bodies, adhere to the skin,
“ and continually corrode it, &c.”—and when Dr Sparr-
man afterwards acknowledges that he never saw these sa-
vages wipe themselves, or clean their skin—I find his
manner of reasoning very weak, and his logic equally
false : for if I should, in my turn, attest that I never saw
cow dung made use of by the Hottentots as an ornament ;
that I never observed their skin corroded by sweat, oint-
ments, and filth—this negative assertion would neither
convince any one, nor elucidate the question.

It must be owned that all these savages, without ex-
ception, men, women, and children, are expert swim-
mers, and perhaps the best divers in the globe. What
inference ought we draw from what I have said as to the
women, whom I surprised while bathing and diving like
fishes ; but that practice, which they use several times a
day, necessarily leads them to a kind of cleanliness which
leaves little power to unctions, or even dust, to impair
and corrode the skin ?

The constant care and attention which the Gona-
quas pay to their dress, sufficiently shew that they are
fond of cleanliness : all, therefore, that can be said, is,
that it is not well understood ; and, even before we ven-
ture so far, it might be necessary to enquire whether they
are not forced to *boughou* themselves in this way, either
because of the temperature of the climate, or from their
wanting those resources which nature has not discovered
to them. Their clothes, in fact, are only the spoils ta-
ken from savage creatures ; but, as I have already men-
tioned, they do not neglect, as some have supposed, to
clean and prepare them before they use them in making
dresses.

The Hottentots are neither poor nor wretched. He
is not poor, because his desires never exceeding his know-
ledge, which is very limited, he never feels the spur of
necessity. Misery is a point of comparison of which he
has no conception : a complete uniformity, and the same
resources, rendering the lot of all perfectly equal, when
abundance prevails, they are all happy, and in times of
scarcity

scarcity they are all in like manner exposed to want. The disgusting contrast of riches mounted on a golden car, and misery dragging its rags along in the dirt, can never pain their hearts: this is an idea which they do not comprehend. The sight of indigence trod under foot, that punishment of compassionate souls, never appears to their eyes under a thousand melancholy shapes. This mortification man in a state of nature never experiences; and if man in a state of civilization becomes accustomed to it in time, and if he attains to such a degree of apathy as to consider that inequality of rank, so shocking and so fatal, as the best state, he is no longer an avowed child of Nature; she disowns and casts him off, ashamed of her own productions, which are a disgrace to her.

The thread of my narrative having been so long broken off, for the purpose of establishing some certain notions respecting these Hottentots, hitherto too little known, something would be still wanting to the information I have given, did I not speak of a particular species or cast, which may be called the *composite*, and which is not older than a century. I do not know that any traveller has mentioned them. This new species will one day efface the ancient; and the epoch of their power will doubtless occasion great changes in the colony, and hasten its ruin. The multiplicity of these individuals, who may become infinite, ought to alarm the Dutch government; but at present it appears to be asleep, and to be no way apprehensive as to the fatal effects of its inattention.

I allude here to those natural children which are the consequence of the intercourse of the white men with the Hottentot women, and of these women with the negroes. At the Cape they are generally named *bastards*. This denomination, however, more peculiarly belongs to the former; because the second are much less numerous; as the Hottentot women do not easily yield to the embraces of the negroes, for whom they entertain a kind of contempt; on account, as they say, of suffering themselves to be sold like beasts; while, on the other hand, they think themselves honoured by having commerce with the whites, and by being styled their mistresses. It is the race arising from these latter unions that is continually gaining ground, and multiplying considerably every

very day : they are free, like the Hottentots, but they imagine themselves superior to them ; though they are despised at the Cape, where it is not even usual to baptise them. The character of these people partakes more of that of an European than of a Hottentot : they have more courage and more activity than the latter, and labour never discourages them ; but, being more impetuous and more enterprising, they are also more mischievous and wicked. It is not uncommon to see them assassinate their masters, to whom they have sold their services ; and it is they, rather than the negroes, who appear foremost in devising acts of treachery, which they commit every day in their plantations. The Hottentot, too mild, and too void of passions, to enter into atrocious enterprises, would not have sufficient strength to carry them into execution : the most cruel treatment is not even capable of inspiring him with an idea of this kind. To conclude, those planters who have only Hottentots in their service, will be very early apprised of danger, should there be any awaiting him.

The illegitimate whites are stout and well made ; their skin is rather of a clearer yellow than that of the Hottentots, and has the colour of dried lemon peel : it is very disagreeable to the sight. Their hair is black, much longer, and less frizzled. Intercourse with women of this new breed, as may naturally be supposed, produces a species still whiter, whose hair is also much less frizzled and though, by thus proceeding gradually, there is at length no sensible difference between them and the Europeans in their hair and the whiteness of their skin, the prominence of the cheek bones is still remarkable. This is a mark never to be erased, and remarkable to the fourth generation, and even farther.

The connection of the Hottentot women with negroes, gives rise to a race still superior to those I have mentioned. They are much taller and better made, and their figure is more agreeable and engaging. Their colour, which holds a mean between the black of the father and the olive tint of the mother, is much less offensive to the sight ; their moral and physical qualities are also very different. They are much sought after, on account of their being capable of great labour ; but what above all renders

renders them of the highest value is, that to much activity, without turbulence, they join a fidelity that never betrays, and which does not fall to the lot of any bastard white. Unfortunately this race are not very numerous, owing to the difficulty of uniting the Hottentot women with the negroes, who are greatly despised by them.

The public would have been much profited, as well as the private interest of the planters increased, had they long ago stirred up government to encourage the propagation of this species; the sacrifice made would not have been heavy, and the expences and money advanced would have yielded an hundred fold for profit.

This is not now the ages of sacred ignorance, when all black people were held to be anthropophagi. The Spaniards themselves do not now believe, as in the time of their barbarous incursions into Peru, that a pure soul cannot exist but in a white body. Travellers, and above all sound philosophy, teach us that an ugly covering may conceal a valuable diamond. Among the various negro nations that inhabit the western coasts of Africa, some are distinguished by a more social disposition than others, by nobler inclinations, by greater activity, and more appetite for knowledge; and it is this race who ought to have been preferred, in order to spread them among the colonies, by granting them every freedom. The planters would have favoured, as much as they could, the union of the strangers with the Hottentot women; the latter, seeing them free, would not have despised them, and would soon have been familiarised with them; and thus would have arisen a generation of men, who, uniting to the mild and peaceable temper of their mothers the essential qualities of the best negroes of Guinea, would have abolished as unnecessary, nay even hazardous, the horrid and slavish chains in this African Corner.

But these methods, so easy and natural, the execution of which some time ago would not have met with any obstacle, will never be employed. At present it is too late to make any attempt of this kind; the turbulent race of the bastard whites are too numerous, and it may be easily foreseen that they will one day be prevalent at the Cape itself.

Again

Again, although this scheme were yet practicable, the desire and good intentions of the Dutch East-India Company would be rendered of no avail by various obstacles. Scrupulously exact in all their engagements, we know that they shew a generosity which, for their own honour and prosperity, all commercial associations ought to assume as a model. There is no doubt but they would, without hesitation, make every sacrifice necessary for the execution of this excellent plan, so well calculated to immortalize them; but a radical fault, the fault of the government, must ever oppose it. It would be requisite, in the first place, to expel all the inhabitants of the Cape and of the colonies, or at least to reform their minds, in order to abolish those foolish and impolitic prejudices which they pretend to encourage.

The Dutch are losers, because it is impossible to prevent the progress of the evil, these planters, so proud of their colour, and who are distinguished by no personal merit from their slaves—it suffers, I say, these ignorant peasants, proud of a moderate fortune which they have not given themselves the trouble to acquire by their industry, to despise and treat with contempt those men, who, having deserved well of the Company by the services they have performed, either as soldiers or sailors, establish themselves at the Cape in virtue of a permission granted them by government; so that the meanest and most worthless of the planters always consider a skilful sailor, or brave soldier, as a being in some manner degraded, and unworthy of being connected with them by marriage: and even the daughter of such a planter, educated in the same principles, would rather perish in wretchedness, than become the wife of one of these patriotic supporters of their country and liberty.

Thus circumstanced, a brave soldier or sailor, sharing with all other men in the wants and imperious laws of nature, more powerful still in warm than in temperate climates, being unable to associate himself with a white woman who would render him happy, has no other resource but to unite with a female Hottentot. Hence proceeds that immense number of bastard whites, who at present swarm all over the colonies. The turbulent blood of the Europeans circulates and ferments in their veins;

and disturbances may every moment result from it, which the planters, too far dispersed to unite in time, will neither have time nor ability to hinder.

This illegitimate race is computed to be a sixth of the number of all the Hottentots in the colonies; and the origin of this mixture is only as old as the establishment of the Dutch at the Cape, that is to say, an hundred and thirty-six years. It may be readily presumed that, when the communication between the white men and the Hottentot women was first established, it was neither so easy nor so general as at present: and, on the other hand, the population of the colony did not amount, as it does now, to eighty thousand white people. This observation alone may be sufficient to give an idea of the actual progression of both. The Hottentot race subject to the colonies deviates more and more every day from its character and origin: they become corrupted and confounded by a mixture of the blacks and the whites; and, as this degeneration accelerates, their distinguishing marks will in time disappear altogether. The phlegmatic and cold constitution of the Hottentots sufficiently checks the progress of population already; whilst the same cause in the women has a contrary effect, and renders them very prolific. A Hottentot woman never has more than three or four children by one husband; with negroes they have three times that number; and with whites they are still more productive.

If the illegitimate whites are by nature mischievous; if they are bold, revengeful, enterprising, and perfidious—is it because they are the offspring of a white man and a Hottentot woman, and because the children bear a greater resemblance to the father than to the mother? This presumption, however mortifying it may be for our species, cannot be controverted. If it happen, which is very rare, that a white woman has connection with a Hottentot, the fruit of their intercourse always retains the good disposition, and the mild and beneficent temper, of the father. These instances, I must repeat, are very uncommon. In love affairs at the Cape, as in Europe, the women shew more modesty, delicacy, and reserve than the men: the latter, on the contrary, never hesitate to gratify their appetite, whoever the object of it may be

be; and the dangers that thence result are not the same to both sexes: but the bastards of the white men and Hottentot women have in them the seeds of every vice, and of every species of disorder.

This, in general, is what I learned, by living among the Hottentots. But I shall stop here, lest I fatigue the reader's patience by these dry details; and return to them only when I may have an opportunity to introduce them without being prolix in my account of the various events of my travels.

As I intended to spend a considerable time in Africa, my first employment was to study the language of the inhabitants; and I indeed succeeded beyond expectation. The language of these people being very poor, has no occasion for words to express abstract and metaphysical ideas; it is susceptible of no ornament. Though it has neither elegant phrases nor a correct syntax, its difficulties are no less insurmountable to those who are destitute of genius and patience. I have however been too well rewarded for the pains I bestowed on this part of my labours, by the pleasure I enjoyed of being able to converse freely with these people, ever to regret that I added a knowledge of this singular dialect to that of several other languages which have been the chief object in the very rigorous education I was brought up in.

There is no similitude in the Hottentot language, as several old writers pretend, "to the gabbling of turkeys" when they fight, to the cry of the magpye, or the "screaming of an owl;" much less do its sounds imitate the cry of the bat, according to Pliny and Herodotus: to judge that it cannot resemble all these things at the same time, we need only compare with one another all its different assimilations. It is equally false, that, to hear Hottentots conversing together, one would take them for a company of stammerers. From all these assertions, which are absolutely contradictory and destroy each other, we are naturally led to think that no traveller, who has spoken of the Hottentot language, has so carefully studied it as to give a clear and precise idea of it; and consequently, without examining into the causes of their astonishing ignorance, I may advance that they have been as

completely deceived themselves as others have been misled by them.

The language of the Hottentots, notwithstanding its singularity, and hard pronunciation, is not so discouraging as it at first appears. It may be learnt by perseverance; I have known planters who spoke it fluently, and I myself was able to make myself understood in a short time. It is, however, in general, very difficult for every European; but more so for a Frenchman than for a Dutchman, a German, &c. especially as the *u*, the *b*, and the *g* are pronounced in the same manner as in the languages of the two latter; that is to say, the *u*, *ou*; and the other two letters by expirations, for which sound a Frenchman's throat is not formed, and therefore he gains it with great labour.

By none of the vocabularies hitherto published, in different publications, can a single word of this language be comprehended. It would be in vain to attempt to use them, for one never could be understood; and a Hottentot would never suspect that he heard his own language. It would appear as if the authors of these vocabularies had purposely suppressed the only mark which often forms the whole signification of the words; for they have made no mention of different clappings with the tongue, which are indispensable marks preceding or dividing the words, and without which they would have no accurate or distinct meaning.

There are three kinds of these clappings, each of them very different from the other. The first, which I shall distinguish by this mark (Δ), the simplest, softest, easiest to be executed, and that which is most used, is performed by pressing the tongue to the palate, against the incisive teeth, while the mouth is shut; then, by quickly detaching the tongue, and opening the mouth at the same time, this clapping is heard; which is nothing else than that small noise, very familiar to us, when, fastened by a wearisome person, we wish to demonstrate, without speaking, that our patience is worn out.

The next clapping (*v*) is rather more sonorous than the other. It is enough, in order to form it, to detach the tongue from the middle of the palate, and to imitate the noise which grooms employ to make a horse go faster.

In

In this case no force is necessary, but simply to detach the tongue, and the sound is produced of itself. Were the sound too distinct, it would be impossible, or at least far from easy, to join it as it should be to the first syllable of the word that must follow it.

There must be greater force given to the third kind of clapping (Δ), which is pronounced with more force, and is heard more accurately. It is the least used, and appears to be the most difficult; for it requires great care and attention to adapt it properly to the word that precedes it, as it is performed by a singular contraction of the tongue, which is drawn back to the extremity of the palate near the throat. It may be readily conceived, that, after this contraction of the tongue, considerable force is employed to push it towards the lips, and to pronounce the words which must come after, without any thing like a rest or stop.

These various clappings have likewise a different modulation, and may be more or less difficult to be executed, according to the letter or syllable which they strike, and with which, as I have already said, they must be united, not to pervert the sense. In this the strength of the pronunciation of this language it may be said consists.

These various differences seem very harsh to an European ear, and very difficult to be acquired. Such indeed they appeared to me at first, but one soon becomes accustomed to them; and I can assert that this language, upon the whole, is not destitute of harmony, and that in the mouth of a Hottentot woman it has its beauties, as the German language has its charms in that of a beautiful lady in Saxony.

I imagine that, if people would attempt to study this language from the vocabularies hitherto published, and to speak it without being otherwise instructed in its principles, they would lose themselves in words void of sense, and the result would be nothing else but confusion—a disgusting chaos, in which the fatigued imagination only discovers ridiculous nonsense.

Some few words indeed may be employed without this clapping of the tongue, but such exceptions are not numerous.

To shew the necessity of these different sounds produced by the tongue for the purpose of shewing the signification

nification of the words, and how they determine the synonyms and different meanings, I shall give an example, as it will render this subject much easier to be comprehended. In the Hottentot language *aap* signifies a horse and an arrow; it is also the names of a river: the difference alone in the clapping of tongue determines the precise idea which it is meant to convey. Pronounced simply, without any collision, it signifies a *horse*; with the second clapping, of which I have spoken, it signifies a *river*; and, with the third, it signifies an *arrow*. In the same way Δ -ou *ip* is a rock; Δ -ou *ip*, the name of the bird called a bustard; Δ *ka ip*, that of a poisonous serpent; and Δ -*ka ip*, is a sort of African antelope.

In addition to these three kinds of clapping, which, as may be easily observed, are indispensably necessary, certain parts of some words are nothing else but sounds formed in the throat; but is impossible to describe them, and they can be imprinted in the memory only by long practice. I shall distinguish them by this mark (*) placed above the letter where they are to be made use of.

But to be more particular and exact, I must add, that one word often has two different significations, by the shrillness or weak sound of one of the vowels in it.

After what has been said, it may be readily seen how hard it would be to write this language in such a manner as to be read and pronounced with that precision which is necessary. It would first of all be requisite to form a particular alphabet for it; and to accustom oneself to these clappings, would be the principal step towards success. But as the study of this language will never form a part of the education of our young men of fortune, who have no desire for being sent so far to learn how to behave in polite company; and as, on the other hand, it would be of no utility to fatigue the reader by a tiresome dictionary, which he would not read; I shall therefore suppress it, and for the satisfaction of my curious readers give a few words only which are connected with natural history.

If any naturalist were desirous of travelling through the same country, it would be of great advantage to him to be able to name to the Hottentots any animal, or other object, which he might wish to procure. An exact vocabulary

bulary of those things which might principally engage his attention, would undoubtedly be found useful to him, and cannot even here displease any one. I should have thought myself very happy had any traveller before me smoothed the first difficulties of this language; for a dictionary of it would have rendered the commencement of my researches less disgusting and less laborious. I therefore consider it as a part of my duty to present here what I so much wished for myself, and to subjoin the primitive names of the greater part of the animals of Africa, such as they have always been known and distinguished by the Hottentots of the deserts. I have annexed likewise the names which the planters at the Cape of Good Hope give them.

It is necessary to observe that the Hottentots of the colonies, having in part forgotten their language, disfigure what remains by a mixture of corrupted Dutch; so that, without mentioning other inconveniences which thence arise, animals change their names, or have several different ones, according to the different cantons or colonies where they are found. This occasions a confusion not easily to be cleared up, and is one reason for giving the preference to the nomenclature of the natives, whose language, which is always the same, is prevented from undergoing any change or alteration.

English

<i>English Names.</i>	<i>Dutch Names.</i>	<i>Hottentot Names.</i>
The Elephant	Oliphant	Δ—Goap
The Rhinoceros	Renoster	v—Nabap
The Hippopotamus	Zee Koe	v—Kaous
The Giraffe	Kameel-Paerd	Δ—Na-ip
The Buffalo	Beuffle	Δ—Ka-oop
The Pafan	Gems-Bock	Δ—Kaip
The Koedoe	Coudoe	v—Koudou, or Gaip
The Bubale	Harte-Beeft	Δ—Kamap
The Zebra	Welde-Paerd	v—Kouarep
The Quaga	Quaga, or Welde Ezel	v—Nou v—Kouarep
The Hare	Haaze	Δ—Ou [*] amp
A Marmot	Das	v—Ka [*] oump
The Wild Boar	Welde-Varke	v—Kou-Goop
The Ant Bear	Erd-Varke	Δ—Goup
The Porcupine	Yzer-Varke	v—Nou ap
A Dog	Hond	Δ—Harip
Dogs	Honden	Δ—Harina
A Rat	Rott	Douroup
A Bat	Vleer-Muyfe	Δ—Nouga-Bouroup
A Lion	Leuw	Gamma
A Tiger	Tyger	Garou-Gamma
A Tiger Cat	Tyger-Kat	Δ—Ou [*] amp
The Hyæna	Wolf	Δ—Hirop
The Wild Dog	Welde-Hond	Δ—Goup
The Jackal	Jakals	Δ—Dirip
The Horse	Paerd	Aap
A Bull	Beull	Karamap
A Cow	Koe	Goumas
An Ox	Ofs	Coumap
A Sheep	Schaap	Goou
A Goat	Bock	Bri-i
A She-Goat	Gytt	Tarare bris
A Bird	Voogel	Δ—Kanip
The Bustard	Trap-Gans	Δ—Ou ip
The French Field Duck	Kor-Haan	Δ—Haragap
A Pheasant	Fefant	Koa Koa, or v—Ka- bos
A Martin	Welde Swaluw	Δ—O-atfi Δ—nam- bro
A Partridge	Patrys	Δ—Ouri-Kinas
A Quail	Kwartel	Δ—Kabip
A Sparrow	Mofs	v—Kabari
A Vulture	Aas-Voogel	Δ—Gha ip

A Wild

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

31

<i>English Names.</i>	<i>Dutch Names.</i>	<i>Hottentot Names.</i>
A Wild Goose	Welde-Gans	Gaamp
Mountain Duck	Berg-Eend	Δ-Karo hei gaamp
The Phenicopteros	Flamingo	Δ—Gaorip
A Turtle Dove	Tortel-Duyf	Δ—Neis
A Mountain	Berg	Δ—Oomma
A Rock	Klep	{ Δ—Guip
A River	Rivier	{ Δ—Karip
A Fountain	Fontyn	v—Aap
The Sea	Zee	Δ—Aaup
A Tree	Boom	Hourip
A Waggon	Waage	Haip
A Flower	Blom	Kouri-ip
Milk	Melck	Δ—Narinz
Water	Watter	Deip
Flesh	Vleesch	v—Kama
Fish	Vis	v—Gaus
A Spider	Spēn	Δ—Ko oup
A Camelcon		Δ—Hous
A Butterfly	Kapelle	v—Karon Koup
		Tabou Tabou
Three different	{ Ree Bock	*Gnicop
kinds of Antelope		Δ—A oup
		Δ—Harip
		Δ—Dinap
		Δ—Kanou-Coup
A Fly	Duyker	Δ—Ouna
A Serpent	Steen Bock	v—Oorokoop
A Tortoise	Vlig	v—Naseep
A Toad	Slang	Δ—Kabooup
The Guana	Schit-Pad	Δ—Aap
A Fusee	Pade	Kgaap
An Arrow	Egouane	Δ—Aure-Koop
A Bow	Snaphan	v—Oree-Goep
An Affagay	Peyl	Kabop
An European	Boog	
A Negro	Sagaye	
	Europees	
	Swarte-Jong	
A Hottentot man	Hottentot	*Khoe-Khoep
A Hottentot woman	Hottentoten	Tarare-Khoes

After

After what I have mentioned as to the manners and simplicity of this nation, one may be easily convinced that their language is poor, and that before the arrival of the Europeans it must have been still poorer. The latter introduced new objects, to which it was necessary to give names; and on this account the Hottentots of the colonies have expressions neither used nor understood by the savage Hottentots, to whom the greater number of these objects are unknown.

But whatever be in this, there is always in this language a great affinity between the thing and the word by which it is distinguished. For example, they call a fusée *Δ-ka-booup*; and, by the manner in which it ought to be pronounced, the clapping of the tongue, and the first syllable *Δ-ka*, imitate the noise of the cock when it falls, and that of the opening of the pan; in short, the word *booup* conveys, in a striking manner, an idea of the explosion or report. In general the Hottentot language is very expressive; and as these people, when they speak, always gesticulate, and represent in pantomime whatever they say, a superficial knowledge of their idiom will enable any one to comprehend the most important things very readily.

It was now three weeks since my envoys set out; but I was not the first to form any reflections on the cause of their delay: I always kept my uneasiness to myself, not wishing to occasion any to those around me; for, by not concealing my suspicions, I should only have supplied them with arms to destroy my projects. They could not, without sadness, think on my determined resolution of penetrating into Caffraria. I sometimes surprised my people discoursing on this subject, and more or less murmuring against their master; but at bottom they were still attached to me, and in their conversation I was the principal object of their agitation and fear. They did not hesitate to call me a rash man, who, apparently caring very little for his life, obstinately wished to make them sharers with him in a most melancholy fate, by conducting them to destruction. I had too much reason to apprehend that they had all agreed to quit me, in case I should persist in my resolutions; and I judged that nothing embarrassed them but the manner of executing their plot. I however
found

found out, that of twenty-five conspirators there were not two who were of that mind; those whom I had engaged to serve me in the course of my journey, saw no great hardship in this secret departure; but those whom I had employed at the house of Mr Mulder, in the country of Auteniqua, and at the Cape under the direction of the fiscal, hesitated much whether they should return to the town or not. In fine, they could neither agree together, nor come to any determination.

I was accused by them of having sacrificed the envoys; and it must be acknowledged indeed that their long absence appeared extraordinary. From what Hans told me, three or four days at most were only necessary for them to go to the dwelling of King Pharoo; and allowing as many for them to remain there, and the same number to return, I found, by this plain calculation, that more than twice the time requisite for the journey was already elapsed. I therefore began to suppose that some accident had overtaken them, or that the suspicions of the Caffres had proved fatal to these unfortunate people. I did not however lose the hope of seeing them again altogether; but I remained in a very doubtful situation, neither knowing what to think nor what orders to give to the rest of my troop, to put an end to their disputes and uneasiness. My brave Klaas thought that we ought still to remain, and to let such of my mutinous attendants as discovered most impatience and ill humour depart when they thought fit.

Meanwhile I put on an air of tranquillity, and continued my hunting expeditions as formerly; but a secret impulse led me, mechanically if I may so say, to that quarter in which I expected to see my deputies arrive. In the evening, being quite cast down by their not appearing, I returned to my camp, to begin the same useless and melancholy walk again next morning. Thus do we divert imagination, when we expect to find the object ardently longed after.

At length Klaas came one evening, and shut himself up with me in my tent, to put the finishing hand to my distress, by informing me that he had now lost every hope, and that Hans and his companions were beyond a doubt assassinated; that the guns, ammunition, and arms which
they

they took along with them had induced the Caffres to destroy them; and that this was sufficient to tempt that nation, at war at this time, and in want of every thing needful for their defence, and particularly iron, to commit murder: and he recommended to me not to weary out the rest of my troop any longer; for, without assistance from them, we should not be able either to proceed or to go back again.

I was well convinced of the force of this reasoning, dictated by the sincerest concern for my person, and the safety of my property which I should have been obliged to leave behind me for want of people to assist me in carrying them. I was almost on the very point of yielding to the advice of Klaas, and of renouncing my solemn engagement never to leave Rocks-Kraal, the only rendezvous where these generous envoys would meet with their master, when we discovered at a distance one of the four people who guided my cattle running towards my camp, apparently alarmed and out of breath. Having informed me that he had just observed, on the opposite side of the river, a considerable body of Caffres who were preparing to cross it, this piece of intelligence at first struck a great panic into all my attendants; while I alone, still flattered myself with the fanciful hopes of yet again seeing my people, and bent my whole attention towards them. As the numerous band which I had heard of did not correspond with my expectations, and destroyed the whole illusion, I sent off four fusileers, under the command of Klaas, to search for my oxen, and to collect them all to my camp; desiring him, after he had done this service, to examine these strangers, without discovering himself, to get information whether they were so numerous as I had been taught to believe, and whether any thing suspicious appeared in their behaviour. I directed him to watch their motions likewise, in order that he might judge what was their design; and I besides strictly charged him that, in case he met with my envoys, he should immediately tell me, by commanding his people to fire their fuses; but, if the company they should see were Caffres, to place himself in ambush, and to dispatch one of his companions to my camp. Just as he was about to depart, all my cattle arrived, with the other
three

three keepers ; who, like their comrades, had been filled with terror and panic.

For my own part, I examined all my arms, and ordered them to be charged, although I had no design to be the first to begin hostilities : but, as I intended to wait determinedly for the enemy, I was resolved to make every resistance likewise in my power ; and it was necessary that I should be prepared for such an event.

I freely own that I was not without uneasiness : not that I feared the event of a battle, for my arms gave me too much confidence in my superiority ; but I should have been vastly sorry to have been obliged to engage before we had come to an explanation. By such a step I should have ruined all my hopes : the pacific intentions which I had always professed, and which alone could have procured me the privilege of travelling through all Caffraria in liberty, being deceived by such acts of hostility, I should have been ranked with the other planters, those barbarous murderers of the savages, and must have been looked upon as an enemy whose whole caravan ought to be destroyed.

As I was employed in these preparations, my mind was distracted by a variety of reflections ; from which I was very suddenly delivered, by a discharge of a fusée as a signal of joy to all my camp : after the orders I had given Klaas, no doubt was entertained that he had fallen in with my envoys. But however favourable this appearance was, my people were not yet altogether freed from their apprehensions, and I found it very hard to calm them wholly. The three keepers of my flocks, particularly, persisted in affirming, that in all the troop of Caffres they had not discovered a single Hottentot ; and thus again suddenly returning from hope to fear, they wished to insinuate, that the signals which had been heard were too evident proofs that an action had been the consequence, and that Klaas was at this time engaged with our enemies.

At the corner of a little hillock however, about three hundred paces distant from us, I discovered Klaas himself, but alone. By the assistance of my spy-glass I could distinctly notice his easy carriage, and even the features of his face, which seemed to promise nothing alarming ;

but I was still more fully convinced when I observed, some minutes after, all the troop advancing the same road, in good order, towards my camp. My Hottentots, joined with the Caffres, gave me cause to conclude that they were in perfect cordiality with one another; and, as they came nearer, I distinguished Hans. I then ordered that all the arms should be laid aside, and desired my people to appear as calm and quiet as they could.

I was very anxious to receive my deputies, and to learn from themselves what risques I could run for them and myself without danger. I did not however think proper to go to meet them, or to quit my small arsenal, until I had heard what these travellers had to relate. When the Caffres found themselves within throw of an assagay, they all stopped; and Hans, quitting the troop, came straight towards me. In a few words he told me, that I was at liberty to pursue my journey into Caffraria; that I should be exposed to no risque; that I would be respected as a friend; that the nation he had quitted invited me in the most pressing manner not to put off the time any longer, and that they would receive me with pleasure; that I might judge of their general intentions by the confidence which they shewed, and by the liberty which several of them had taken to come and pay me a visit; that they offered me their friendship, and requested mine; and, in a word, that they had left their own country on the assurances that were given them that they would meet with a favourable reception from us.

As to the delay which had so greatly alarmed us, Hans told me that, when he came among the Caffres, he could not find king Pharoo, who had retired to the distance of thirty leagues from the usual place of his residence: that after waiting some time in hopes of seeing him return, fearing that he should not be able to accomplish the business for which he was sent, he had resolved to go in search of him; but learning from a new horde that the chief had again set out, and that no one knew what route he would pursue, or how long he would be absent, he had desisted from this attempt. Some believed that the prince was gone towards the colonies; and others that he intended to visit the *Tambouckis*, a nation bordering on Caffraria, with whom they carried on a trade
for

for iron and arms. He added, that finding it impossible to execute my orders, and not knowing what course to pursue, he thought it would be best to return, and bring back my two Hottentots; but that, from the favourable accounts which he had given of my character, and pacific disposition, several of the Caffres offered of their own accord to accompany him, and in their turn to come as a deputation, to assure me of the general good-will which all the inhabitants bore towards me; and that, being fully satisfied I was not a Dutch planter, they would receive me among them as a friend, and even as their Defender.

The Caffres depended that I would enable them to take vengeance on a certain planter of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, against whom they had dismal complaints to make, and whose name alone inspired them with horror. I indeed afterwards received some details respecting the life of this wretch, and particular considerations prevent me from here exposing his name; but the crimes which have rendered him a monster are not unknown to any inhabitant of the Cape. In vain has the government repeatedly summoned him to appear at its tribunal, to answer for his conduct; entrenched in territories where the laws are inactive, and without force, the orders of the governor, the threats of his subalterns, and all their resolutions, are to him only signals for perpetrating fresh enormities.

But not to enter further into conversation, or ask more questions, which would have been unseasonable, I gave permission to the Caffres to advance. Hans therefore made a sign to them with his hand, and in a moment I found myself surrounded. Without comprehending my envoys, there were in all nineteen men, five women, and two young children. They saluted me, one after the other, by the word *tabe*, which I knew as well as they, and which was all the answer I made to their compliments; but I understood very little of their language. In their pronunciation they did not employ that clapping used by the Hottentots; but what shewed their difference from the Gonaquas most sensibly, was their manner of saluting. They all spoke together, and with a precipitation and volubility which appeared to me so much the stranger, as I had been for almost a year accustomed to

the slow manner of my indolent Hottentots. I could not conceive to what cause this confused noise which buzzed in my ears was to be imputed; and I entirely lost all patience, as I was not able to catch any sound accurately.

Although I could not understand what these Caffres said to one another, I observed that their attention was very much engaged, either with my camp, my person, or my people, and their different motions. Their eyes roved with rapidity from one object to another; and every thing in turn struck them with surprise. I have somewhere read that astonishment indicates ignorance; but ignorance does not prove want of abilities. This reflection may be applied to the Caffres, for undoubtedly they cannot be accused of stupidity; and between them and the Hottentots there is a vast distance, in respect to ingenuity and industry. Hans had boasted much to them of my double-barrelled fuses and pistols; and from his account they were inclined to consider my arms as wonderful things. One of them, in the name of all the rest, having asked permission to see them, I ordered them to be brought forth; and I shewed them to them without manifesting the least suspicion. Being handed about from one to another, they were examined and turned over with the most minute attention; but their eager curiosity required something more. This I expected, and I luckily had an opportunity of gratifying them. Observing two swallows cleaving the air before me, I fired at them, and they fell at the distance of a few paces from us. This sudden action, performed with the utmost composure, redoubled their astonishment; and they knew not which most to admire, the arms, or the person who used them. It is certain that this lucky stroke, which might not have succeeded, inspired them with the highest idea of my skill; and I took advantage of it to impress them with a deeper sense of my superiority. I asked them, by signs, whether they could do the same with their assagays; but they shook their heads with a smile, and gave me to understand, that with these weapons it was impossible to kill a bird flying. One of them, however, rising up, pointed to my sheep, which were feeding at some distance, and signified that he and his companions could strike them running, as well as other quadrupeds, whether of
greater

greater or less size. Hans then presented to me a young Caffre, who was perfectly well formed, and whose person immediately prepossessed me in his favour. Before this period I had never seen any of these people but, as one may say, in a rude state. I however could not be satisfied with contemplating this youth; and his companions assured me that he was considered in the country as one of those who were most expert in throwing the assagay and the short club*; and that his dexterity in this respect had acquired him great reputation. I had heard so much of the Caffres, and of their formidable arms, that I eagerly embraced this opportunity of being convinced, by my own eyes, what a young Caffre could do who was only eighteen years of age, and who boasted of his skill with so much simplicity. As it was near dinner time, and as I proposed to regale all these people, as well as my own, I sent for a sheep; and pointing to it with my finger, I gave the youth permission to take aim at it. In his left hand he held five assagays, one of which, at my desire, he grasped in his right; and the sheep, being let loose, began to run towards the flock. In the mean time he brandished his assagay with force; darted forward by four or five rapid leaps, and having discharged the weapon, it flew threw the air with a whizzing noise, and pierced through the sides of the animal; which staggered, and fell down dead on the place.

I could not hide on this occasion my joy and my astonishment. So much skill and strength, added to gracefulness, excited the admiration of all my people. Vanity is an universal passion; but it is modified according to manners and climates. In Europe it sparkles in the eyes and in every feature of a beautiful woman, and inspires her with haughtiness; it is the soul of talents, and gives birth to masterpieces of every kind; it conceals itself even under the coarsest attire and rags. In Africa, a savage cannot hide it: the testimonies of approbation which we all bestowed upon my young Caffre, elevated his looks, and made the muscles of his face expand. Proud of such a triumph, and of my applauses, his feet no longer touch-

H 3

ed

* A sort of weapon they use in the same manner with the assagay. I have a large and a small one in my collection.

ed the earth; he measured my height, stood close by me and looked as if he said, In what am I below you?

He equally delighted his own countrymen with his success: they fixed their eyes upon me, and endeavoured to discover by my countenance what effect this display of ingenuity had effected upon me.

I had several occasions afterwards to observe, that these people need only an able chief at their head, and good order established among them, to destroy the Hottentot nation, and all the colonies; but the superiority of our arms will render their courage and dexterity of no avail, whilst they have no other weapons of defence but their assegays.

Having extracted his lance from the body of the animal, the young Caffre struck the iron point of it several times into the sand, and carefully cleaned it with a handful of grass.

I was very sorry that I was not able to explain myself properly to these strangers; the length of time necessary for interpretation, and perhaps the narrow conception of the interpreter, excited my impatience to such a degree that I could scarcely contain it. On the other hand, being more open and lively than the Hottentots, and having in their character nothing approaching to their taciturnity, these people gained upon me in volubility; and from the time of their arrival I had done nothing but return answers to those questions with which their curiosity continually teased me. As I wished rather to be informed than to inform, I flattered myself with the hopes of seeing their volubility of words and confused gestures soon at an end; and that at length I also should have my course, when the first warmth had abated.

More foreseeing than the Hottentots, and depending less on chance for their subsistence, they had not set out, as we commonly say, without full pockets. They had brought along with them several oxen intended for provision, and four more to carry their baggage. Nor had they forgot those beautiful baskets which I had admired so much among the Gonaquas; and which they proposed to exchange by the way, or with us, on very advantageous terms. They had also some cows with their calves; so that this caravan had an air of wealth and riches which

one would not expect to see in the wretched valleys of Savoy.

I traced out, at a little distance from my camp, the exact spot where I wished them to lodge; and being more fortunate or better obeyed than Idomeneus, when he built the city of Salentum, within a few minutes I observed a small colony rising up before me.

Having kindled our fires, we cut the sheep into pieces and roasted it; and in a little time nothing remained of it but the skin. I was not ignorant how powerful an agent interest is to move all men, and how much it tends to dispose them to benevolence. In my present situation I put in practice this principle, which had so often succeeded with me before. Being desirous of gaining over these Caffres as I had gained the first savages I met with, and particularly the Gonaquas, I distributed among my guests different kinds of toys, and a certain quantity of tobacco. They accepted my presents with great pleasure, and each of them began to use them instantly.

But what principally occupied their attention, and what they would have willingly pilfered from me, was iron. They devoured it with their eyes, extolling it highly, and seeming to value it above every thing else. Happening to see some hatchets, pick-axes, large augers, and utensils of all kinds, which were behind my waggons, they coveted them with a sort of impatience, and seemed only to want an opportunity to lay hands on them. I however well knew how savages ought to be treated, and I feared them so very little, that, even if I had not been so well armed, I should have cheerfully given up these objects to them; but, as I carried along with me so many implements, they were become so indispensibly necessary, that it was not possible for me to be generous, and sacrifice them. Nevertheless, in order that I might destroy their desire, or at least weaken its ardour, since I could not deprive them of a knowledge of these useful utensils, I ordered them to be concealed with care. From what I had learned of the embarrassment under which these savages were respecting their arms, I found that to expose them any longer to temptation, was indeed dangerous, as it might lead them to form resolutions hurtful to my repose, and to get possession of those articles by stratagem,

stratagem, if they could not by open force. Such in general is the character of the real savage, and such is nature. No one has a right to retain that which belongs to all, and the least inequality would be a source of the greatest misfortunes. Whoever has read *Captain Cook's Voyages to the South Seas*, must have remarked that this navigator and his crew never landed without sustaining some loss; the islanders robbed them even in their vessel, carried away the arms of those who were sent out on hunting parties, and stole the sailors clothes, &c. Dr Forster informs us that Dr Sparrman, after being robbed of his sword, lost also in the same excursion two-thirds of his clothes. The Caffres and the Hottentots have not yet attained to that degree of dexterity; but they are not entirely free from blame in this respect. To continue on friendly terms with them, one must wink at many trifling losses, or lock up their property with great care.

I met with a satisfactory evidence of the urgent necessity under which the Caffres were of procuring iron. I blamed myself for having made them advance perhaps too soon, and for not having taken proper precautions. I however followed them, and gave orders that they should be narrowly watched; and both I and Klaas perceived, though not without uneasiness, by the manner in which they conversed together, and measured the length and thickness of the bands that surrounded the wheels of my carriages, how much delighted they were with this treasure. Had these people been able to read, and had they found in certain books, replete with excellent morality, which are common in the hands of our ladies of fashion, that the simplest means of resisting temptation is to yield to it—this maxim, which is rather too philosophical, would not have been looked upon by the Caffres as a piece of humour, much less as an absurdity, and my ruin would have been inevitable.

My Hottentots, from their jealousy and suspicion, were however still attentive to every thing that passed; and, as if my own remarks had not been sufficient, they came every moment to add theirs, and to entertain me with some new scene. I easily guessed their motives, for I every moment saw a spirit of discord fomenting amongst them; and it was then that, taking the whole blame, I
justly

justly reproached myself for occasioning the sensible coolness I remarked among my people, which my too great precipitation had given rise to; and I regretted that I had very unseasonably stopped at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, to solicit the assistance of all the planters, who by their speeches frightened my people, and disturbed the harmony of my caravan: so true it is that the success of every undertaking depends in a great measure upon secrecy.

I observed at this time indeed nothing to alarm me: for we had too great a superiority over our guests, both in strength and in arms, had it been necessary to have recourse to violence, the last means which ought to be employed with savages. I had no occasion to be apprehensive of any surprise on their part, as the spot I had assigned them was so situated that the smallest attempt would have occasioned their destruction; but this did not prevent me from redoubling my precautions and severity, both to keep my people to their duty, and to convince my guests that they could neither attack me openly, nor by stratagem, with any hopes of success. If I except two of my chasseurs whom I every day sent to procure provisions, and four other people who guarded my cattle at pasture, there was not one of them that ever went out of my sight. As for me, I remained continually in my camp, where I spent whole days in conversing with the Caffres, and in making an interpreter explain their answers to those questions which I every moment put to them, from a desire of being instructed, and receiving certain information respecting this nation, still less known than that of the Hottentots. Our mutual embarrassment, and the difficulty of translating our different expressions, wasted, I must own, a great deal of time. The knowledge I acquired every day came so slowly, and amounted to so little, that I spent a whole week in these laborious conversations: but finding at length nothing but affability and probity amongst them, and being convinced that they acted sincerely and without deceit, I was under much less restraint: I divested myself of part of my reserve, and forced all my people to be quite at ease while among them.

A more intimate acquaintance with their language soon rendered our conversations much more interesting;
I began

I began to make myself understood, and I could much easier understand what they said to me.

I was continually importuned by them to follow them to their country, and they twenty times repeated all those inducements which my interpreter had mentioned on his arrival. I was indeed too much inclined to listen to these seducing invitations; but it never was my intention to set out with them: the reason of this will be seen hereafter. I therefore begged to be excused, telling them that it was impossible for me to get ready so soon as they wished; and then examining them all in the strictest manner, I added, that, not being acquainted with their country myself, I had been told that it was filled with mountains and woods, difficult to be passed, and that on this account I could not carry my oxen and carriages along with me. They appeared to be very little affected with this declaration; and from the pleasure which they seemed to testify on my promising soon to pay them a visit, I judged that they had very little expectation to get possession of my large pick-axes, and the iron which surrounded my waggon wheels.

However, as I expressed my friendship towards them, and made them promises, I proportionably observed their vengeance kindle up in their countenances, and that they seemed to place their only hopes of safety in me. They held many conferences, pressed close one to another, and sufficiently shewed by their gestures the high opinion which they had formed of my strength, and of my sincere desire to serve them. The name of the ferocious inhabitant of Bruyntjes-Hoogte was continually in their mouths; and one of them, shaking his head through spite and rage, told me that, among other victims, his wife ready to lie-in, and two children, had been butchered by the hand of this planter; and that a thirst of blood had hurried him to this crime, merely from a pleasure of committing it. However shocking the following anecdote may appear, I must give it a place here, in the same way in which it was mentioned to me, and as it has been since certified to me upwards of twenty times.

At the time when the planters and the Caffres lived on friendly terms together, and had no reason to fear or to persecute each other, the tiger of Bruyntjes-Hoogte,

te, who was disconcerted by this harmony, and who could not be happy except when surrounded by carnage and slaughter, in hopes of stirring up the flames of war, and reviving ancient quarrels, thought proper to procure from the town a few gun-barrels, which were of no more value than old iron. Having easily found means to exchange them with the Caffres, who are always in want of such things, before he delivered them he spiked up the touch-holes, put a double charge of powder into each of them, and filled them with nails and pieces of iron, which he rammed into them up to the mouth. The unfortunate savages, who were not acquainted with fire-arms but from their effects, and who knew nothing of their mechanism, carried home their barrels, and prepared to form them into assegays. The fires being kindled, and the fatal barrels put into them, as soon as they grew hot the powder took fire, and produced a dreadful explosion, which in a moment scattered the immense furnace, the workmen, and their instruments; and even wounded a great many who stood at a considerable distance. One of them who told me this circumstance, of which the whole horde were witnesses, made me number the wounds he got in this tragical experiment, and the indelible wounds with which all his body was overspread.

A single anecdote of this kind is enough to justify the implacable hatred which rages in the rankled breasts of the Caffres; and which we may even affirm that they bring into the world with them. Why, therefore, should we consider as the effects of a disposition naturally ferocious, those sudden and unexpected attacks, which are only at bottom just reprisals? Nature has not been more a step-mother to the Caffres than to any other savage nation; all equally revolt at injustice and tyranny; and the calmest and most peaceable beings that we know, the Caribs of the southern coasts of America, are changed into furious lions, if any inconsiderate invader is only bold enough to attack them in their mean retirements.

If these Caffres, when worn out by persecution, and perpetually plundered and harassed, have been led to commit acts of cruelty; if their plans for being revenged have sometimes succeeded; and if they have trod and destroyed crops, burnt plantations, and massacred the proprietors,

proprieters, the white people lent them their fury, by setting them examples of the most dreadful violence.

The implacable dislike of the Caffres still unluckily pervades a part of the Hottentots, whom the insidious and treacherous policy of the planters has perverted, and engaged in their conspiracies, in order to lessen those risques to which the method necessary to be pursued with the Caffres exposes them, and to be able to meet them upon an equal footing. These precautions, however, are often of no avail against the address and active vigilance of the enemy. The Hottentot, too timid, and too badly armed, to shew himself openly, depends much upon stratagem: taking upon himself the office of spy, he silently reconnoitres the posts occupied by the adverse party; and, above all, those where their treasures are deposited. But the piercing eye of the Caffre soon discovers his secret motions; and darting upon the spy like an arrow from a bow, he falls the victim of his vengeance in an instant.

By paying attention to this nation, so much abused, and that abuse every day encreasing, I began to form a no less favourable idea of them than I did of that of the Hottentots; and from my own principles, and manner of behaving to the savages, I could not allow myself to think that I was in any danger from either of them. My hours, the pleasures and occupations of which I continually varied, rolled on like the past, without trouble and without uneasiness. I had begun my hunting excursions, and my guests followed me in turns; but I chose to be accompanied, in preference to any other, by my young Caffre, who afforded me the satisfaction of seeing sometimes a gnou fall by his hand, and sometimes other animals, which he killed with his formidable assagay with as much dexterity as he had shewn in piercing the sheep. In one of our hunting parties he assisted me to kill a male hippopotamus of an extraordinary size; it was the only one we had met with, and perhaps the only one to be found in the compass of ten miles: the firing of our fusées, which thundered on all sides from morning till night, had undoubtedly frightened all the rest. I did not find in this one that flavour which had given me so much pleasure in the first female I killed. My people pretended that it was too old; and that, besides, a female

was

was always superior in delicacy. Its flesh had a more solid consistence, but it was not so thick as that of the females, which differ in nothing from what we call in France *petit sale*; but, above all, it was disgustingly rancid, except for the palate of a Hottentot. The Caffres, who are not so fond of grease as the Hottentots, set no great value upon it, and preferred the flesh of their oxen. The very sheep did not seduce them; and this may abundantly account for their never rearing any of these animals themselves.

I had not yet closely surveyed the horned cattle which they brought with them, because at break of day they strayed to the thickets and pastures, and were not brought back by their keepers till the evening. One day, however, having repaired to their kraal very early, I was much surprised when I first beheld one of these animals. I scarcely knew them to be oxen and cows: not on account of their being much smaller than ours, since I observed in them the same form, and the same fundamental characteristics, in which I could not be deceived; but on account of the multiplicity of their horns, and the variety of their different twistings. They had a great resemblance to those marine productions, known by naturalists under the name of *flags horns*. Being at this time persuaded that these concretions, of which I had no idea, were a peculiar present of nature, I considered the Caffre oxen as a variety of the species: but I was undeceived by my guests, who informed me that this singularity was only the effect of their invention and taste; and that, by means of a process with which they were well acquainted, they could not only multiply these horns, but also give them whatever forms their imagination might suggest. Having offered to exhibit their skill in my presence, if I had any desire of learning their method, it appeared to me so new and uncommon, that I was willing to serve an apprenticeship; and during several days I attended a regular course of lectures on this head.

They seize this animal at the tenderest age they possibly can: and, when the horns begin to sprout, they make a small vertical incision in them with a saw, or with any other instrument that may be substituted for it, and divide them into two parts. This division makes the horns,

yet tender, separate of themselves; so that in time the animal has four very distinct ones. If they are anxious to have six, or even more, several notches made with the saw produce as many as may be required: but if they are desirous of forcing one of these divisions, or the whole horn, to form, for example, a complete circle, they cut away from the point, which must not be hurt, a small part of its thickness; and this amputation, often renewed, and with much patience, makes the horn bend in a contrary direction; and the point meeting the root, it exhibits the appearance of a perfect circle. As it is certain that incision always occasions a greater or less degree of bending, it may be easily understood that every variation which caprice can imagine may be effected by this simple process.

In a word, one must be a native Caffre, and have his ideas, together with his patience, to submit to that minute care and unwearied attention required for this operation, which in this country can only be useless, but which in other climates would be hurtful: for the horn, thus disfigured, would become weak; whereas, when preserved strong and complete, it keeps at a distance the starved bears and wolves of Europe.

During my residence among the Caffres, examining their oxen and utensils, and harassing them with questions respecting their country, their manners, and their customs, my attention was attracted by a hollow noise which seemed to proceed from a great distance, and which struck my ear at certain intervals. Having asked them what it was, and whether they heard it as well as I, they informed me that three or four of their companions were employed at the bottom of a small rock, which they had discovered in the neighbourhood, in forging some arms from bits of old iron they had brought with them, or procured in exchange by the way. Being equally anxious to know whether they had not stole some of my utensils, as curious to learn their manner of proceeding in an operation so difficult for savages, destitute of even the simplest tools, I prevailed on two of them to leave the rest, and to conduct me to the forge. As this unexpected visit, which furnished me with an opportunity of giving these people some information respecting the first
mechanism

mechanism of a forge, of which they had little idea, may have been attended with very important consequences, I must not omit the smallest circumstance of a transaction, which was perfectly new both to me and these savages.

They forge and mould their own assagay ; but, as they are ignorant of any of the properties of iron except its malleability, their art does not extend so far as to cast it ; and on this account they must have that which has been already wrought. They are wonderfully expert in applying to their own purposes old gun-barrels, hoops, and other pieces of iron. Their assagays are of two kinds : in one the handle is entirely of iron, and perfectly round ; the other, which is more skilfully, I ought rather to say cruelly, formed, has a square handle, and two of the angles are full of notches inclining downwards, whilst those of the two alternate ones incline in a contrary direction ; which occasions a dreadful laceration in the flesh, whether they enter the body or are extracted from it. Their patience cannot fail to excite admiration, when one thinks that with a block of granite, or even common rock, which serves them for an anvil, and a piece of the same substance for a hammer, they fabricate arms as well finished as if they had come from the hands of the most skilful artist. I defy any blacksmith, notwithstanding all his skill, and every effort of his ingenuity, to shape any thing, with the two instruments I have spoken of, equal to what these savages produce.

The Caffres whom I saw were gathered about a large fire, at the bottom of a rocky eminence, and were drawing from it a pretty large bar of iron, which was red hot. Having placed it on the anvil, they began to beat it with stones exceedingly hard, and of such a figure as rendered them easy to be held and managed in the hand. They seemed to perform their work with much dexterity. But what appeared to me most extraordinary, and afforded me an excellent opportunity of giving them some useful lessons on its mechanism, had they been capable of putting them in practice, was their bellows. Their bellows indeed, which was a most wretched instrument, was composed of a sheep's skin properly stripped off, and well sewed. Those parts that covered the four feet, which had been cut off as useless, and even inconvenient,

were tied. They had also cut off the head; and placed in the orifice of the neck the mouth of a gun barrel, around which the skin was drawn together, and carefully fastened. The person who used this instrument, holding the pipe to the fire with one hand, pushed forwards and drew back the extremity of the skin with the other; and though this fatiguing method did not always give intensity to the fire sufficient to heat the iron, yet as these poor Cyclops were acquainted with no other, they were never discouraged. I sincerely pitied them; and the pains they took to accomplish their end, redoubled the pleasure which I enjoyed in pointing out to them an easier and much more effectual process. I had great difficulty to make them comprehend how much superior the bellows of our forges in Europe were to their invention; and being persuaded that the little they might catch of my explanation would soon escape from their memories, and would consequently be of no real advantage to them, I resolved to add example to precept, and to operate myself in their presence. Having dispatched one of my people to our camp, with orders to bring the bottoms of two boxes, a piece of summer kross, a hoop, a few small nails, a hammer, a saw, and other tools that I might have occasion for—as soon as he returned, I formed in great haste, and in a very rude manner, a pair of bellows, which were not more powerful than those generally used in our kitchens. Two pieces of hoop, which I placed in the inside, served to keep the skin always at an equal distance; and I did not forget to make a hole in the inferior part, to give a readier admittance to the air—a simple method of which they had no conception, and for want of which they were obliged to waste a great deal of time in filling their sheep's skin. I had no iron pipe; but, as I only meant to make a model, I fixed to the extremity of mine a toothpick case, after sawing off one of its ends. I then placed my instrument on the ground, near the fire; and having fixed a forked stick in the ground, I laid across it a kind of lever, which was fastened to a bit of packthread proceeding from the bellows, and to which was fixed a piece of lead weighing seven or eight pounds. To form a just idea of the surprise of these Caffres on this occasion, one must have seen with what

what attention they beheld all my operations; the uncertainty under which they were, and their anxiety to discover what would be the event. They could not restrain their acclamations, when they saw me by a few easy motions, and with one hand, give their fire the greatest activity, by the velocity with which I made my machine draw in, and again force out the air. Putting some pieces of iron into their fire, I made them in a few minutes red hot, which they undoubtedly could not have done in half an hour. This specimen of my skill raised their astonishment to the highest pitch. I may venture to say that they were almost convulsed and thrown into a delirium. They danced and leaped around the bellows; each tried them in turns, and they clapped their hands to testify their joy the better. They begged me to make them a present of this surprising machine, and appeared to wait for my answer with impatience, not imagining, as I supposed, that I would readily give up so valuable a piece of furniture. It would gratify me much to hear, at some after period, that they use my bellows, that they have brought them to perfection; and, above all, that they still have a remembrance of that stranger who first supplied them with the most essential instrument in metallurgy.

The inhabitant of Caffraria lives so familiarly amidst his cattle, and talks to them in so mild a manner, that they pay the most perfect obedience to his voice. As they are never tormented or treated cruelly by their keepers, these peaceful animals never use against them those arms which nature has supplied them with. The proprietor taking upon himself the care of instructing and cleaning them, does not even tie up the cows in order to be milked. If maternal sensations, however, speak forcibly to their instinct, and lead them to keep back their milk for the use of their young, the means adopted by the Caffres to compel them to yield, are much simpler and less disgusting than those used by the Hottentots. A shackle is put round one of the animal's hind feet; a robust man then drags it backwards, and being hurt by this attitude, she then suffers her milk to flow. They use the same method when a cow has been deprived of her calf. Whether this difference between these cows and

those of Europe, originates from their nature, their species, or the climate; it is certain that it exists, and that the expedient I have related is necessary, and practised in general by the savages.

The milk is received in that kind of baskets which I have before mentioned, and which are commonly made by the women. Their size varies according to fancy, but their form is always the same. Being very light, and in no danger of breaking, they are, without doubt, preferable to our vessels, of whatever substance they may be. As the women who were in my camp had not neglected their tools, and had brought reeds with them, that they might not be idle, I amused myself in seeing them weave some of these beautiful baskets, which, as soon as finished, they very readily exchanged with me for toys.

They were careful to wash them thoroughly before they drew down the milk into these vessels; but this was not so much owing to a cleanly turn, as with the design of rendering them closer in their texture; for, however much I may be prepossessed in favour of these savages, as I profess that it is my intention to say every thing with regard to them that I know, I must not hide even their faults. I must therefore acknowledge, that the Caffres are accustomed always to season their utensils with their own urine; and that they never give themselves the trouble to search for water, when it is not just at hand.

This method, which they used before my eyes, was not very delicate. They were mindful every evening to bring me a basket full of milk, which my people and Kees, much less difficult than their master, gladly accepted. I, however, took care to avoid shewing before my neighbours the invincible disgust which their daily presents gave me; and I would rather have been poisoned for a few moments than have distressed or mortified them by a refusal; for it has been my uniform maxim, in all the places through which I travelled, never to oppose received customs. Nothing can offend or irritate a people more than to attack, by satire and ridicule, their opinions, their taste, and their usages; and, indeed, nothing is more absurd and indecent. I am sorry that I
have

have this accusation to make against the most social and the most amiable of nations; and to see them in this respect an object of reproach even to their nearest neighbours. Can it appear strange that one does not observe at London, the air, the manners, and the politeness, of the agreeable coxcomb of the banks of the Seine? A man of sense never openly condemns, any thing that he sees practised in those countries through which he travels: however ridiculous their prejudices may be, he pretends to respect them, because he has no right to oppose them. This method, which leaves an open field for reflection, procures him a flattering reception, and those attentions which are due to all men of every country. If there is a case in which the application of these principles is indispensibly necessary, it is, above all, with regard to savages. In my opinion, nothing is superior to roast beef and plum pudding, when I dine in England; I would swallow train oil with the Laplander; and, among the Hottentots, satisfied with their steaks, I could easily forget bread, and look upon corn as useless.

However strong the Caffre's attachment may be to his flocks, it is by no means exclusive; he has a violent affection, that even becomes a kind of passion, for his dog, and he shews every attention, and the most extravagant fondness, for this animal; gratitude, therefore, soon induces it to become his best friend. My pack were never so much caressed, nor so well fed, as when this small horde remained with me: my great Yager, above all, raised their admiration; they constantly told me, that he was a most noble animal; and so much were their minds infatuated with regard to him, that there was not a man in the company, who, if I had desired it, would not have given twelve oxen in exchange for him. It must be confessed that Yager was one of the strongest and best made dogs in the colonies. Neither he nor any of his companions ever left my guests, with whom they spent the greatest part of the day in their kraals. These good people allowed them to lap quietly the milk in their baskets; nor did they ever dare to touch it until these parasites were satisfied. I am fully persuaded, that these animals, which returned every evening to their kennels, would have been of no service to us, had we been threat-

ened

ened with any danger from the savages. They were so much attached to the Caffres, and had become so little accustomed to my people, that when any of them wandered too far, and returned to the camp later than usual, he was forced to tell his companions to call back the dogs, and not let them attack him, and perhaps tear him to pieces.

Upon the smallest appearance of any villainy or treachery on the part of the Caffres, I would have ordered my whole pack to be tied up; but, as I saw nothing that could awaken my suspicions, had I prevented them from enjoying the company of my dogs, I should only have mortified them to no purpose, and deprived them of a pleasure which attached them more and more to my person; and I should have likewise abolished that liberty by which they were every moment rendered more steady.

My way of thinking, in this particular, was likewise peculiar to myself. In vain should I have attempted to make the Hottentots adopt my opinions; for a panic terror keeping them always in continual dread, all my representations and remarks on the openness and affability of these strangers, and even their own imprudent acknowledgements, were not capable of rooting out their prejudices: Caffraria, according to them, was soon to be the tomb which I took a pleasure to dig with my own hands; and as they refused to be accomplices in my death, they would by no means consent to be the victims of my rashness. Neither the dread of punishment, when I should come again to the Dutch settlements, nor my threatenings of chastising such base deserters on the very spot, could deter them from their proposal.

This alteration always seemed to me to be something new; and I was much disappointed to see them so obstinate in thwarting my desires, and so forgetful of their duty. I had, it is true, found them refractory and disobedient before I arrived at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, when I saw myself cruelly abandoned by the horde who had for some time travelled along with me, and by the detachment that joined me in the night: But here circumstances were widely different. We had no assurances or promises from the Caffres; we had never before fallen in with any of them; their manners, their character, and their way

way of living, were entirely unknown to us; prejudice, which is generally strengthened by the absence of danger, had always represented them to us as a ferocious and sanguinary people. The scheme of penetrating through their country as far as the sea, might therefore justly alarm men destitute of firmness and intrepidity; but at this time I could see nothing in their refusal except obstinacy and disobedience, and a certain spirit of disorder, which inspired them with a dislike for the tediousness and fatigue of so long a journey. There were other reasons, which I was then ignorant of, and found out when too late, which all contributed for the same purpose.

Resolved notwithstanding, to pursue my own plan, and anxious that I should be accompanied only by people who had never dared to shew the least signs of disobedience, who could boast of having subjected obstacles to my pleasure, and who had never dictated to their chief, as maxims of prudence, what were only the precautions of their fear and pusillanimity, I tormented my imagination, if I may so call it, and made a thousand efforts to devise some means of extricating myself from my disagreeable situation.

I depended upon Klaas as on myself, and I was equally sure of old Swanepoel and my hunter Zean, who had followed me from Milk-Valley, and who killed for me the first *tzairan* or *blue antelope*: Pit and Adam were likewise both strongly attached to me; and Narina's cousin, and two of his companions, had offered me their services: but all these three being entirely unacquainted with the use of fire-arms, might be as much afraid of discharging a fusée as of receiving the fire of others. They, however, added to my number, and I hoped to be able to derive some benefit from their help. The Greeks who sacked the city of Troy of old had neither the power nor the arms of Achilles.

Accompanied only by these eight people I determined to attempt this journey; but as my plan was not yet properly digested, I thought it would be proper not to give any intimation of my design until the departure of the Caffres, whom I wished particularly to know nothing at all about it.

One secret, however, which had always escaped me before, notwithstanding all my foresight and care, unexpectedly

pectedly cleared up part of my suspicions. Klaas arriving one afternoon from a hunting excursion, entered my tent, and informed me that four bastard Hottentots were concealed in my camp, and that he suspected them to be spies sent by the planters of Bruyntjes-Hoogte. He understood, he said, from such part of the conversation of these villains as he could overhear, that the whites knew of the arrival of the Caffres at my camp, and of their residence there; that they all murmured on this account, and were astonished that I should receive their most inveterate enemies with so much cordiality. Klaas strongly urged me to be on my guard until he should learn more; requesting me, above all, to be extremely cautious of depending on one of my people, whose name was Slinger, and whom he believed to be accessory to their designs, and to co-operate with the four emissaries in a private way.

Enraged at the boldness of these people, and the imprudence in entering my camp, I ordered them immediately to be brought before me. By their timid and embarrassed gait, I could easily perceive their guilt; and I asked them, in a stern manner, by whose orders they had dared to introduce themselves among my people, and to conceal themselves without letting me know, as if they hoped to escape detection. This speech, delivered rather in a harsh tone, my threats of inflicting instant punishment upon them, and the passion with which all my features were animated, frightened them so much, that they were incapable of returning an answer. I added, that I suffered no spies near me; that I always suspected those who entered my camp privately, and that they deserved to be punished as traitors; that I did not consider them of so much consequence as to proceed to such an extremity; but that they might, whatever had been their intention, tell those who sent them every thing they had seen; that being perfectly master of my own will, no one had a right to call me to an account for my actions; that an irreproachable conduct placed me beyond the reach of fear; that, as I never espoused quarrels in which I had no concern, I had no reason for entering into any with these Caffres, by whom I was surrounded, and to whom I would readily render those services which friendly and
inoffensive

inoffensive people had a right to expect from the compassionate and just part of mankind; that I would be answerable for their good behaviour, and take them under my protection as long as they remained with me; but that equity, which prompted me to defend them, would also determine me to turn my arms against them, should I observe them make the least attempt to disturb the repose of the planters. I concluded by observing, that I was sufficiently acquainted with the conduct of both, to be convinced that these savages, who breathed nothing but peace and quiet, would by no means be first in giving the signal for hostilities being commenced.

In consequence of this speech, which was keen enough, I ordered these four bastard Hottentots instantly to quit my camp, and made four of my fusileers accompany them until they should be out of my sight. I warned them, that if ever they should think proper to return, whatever might be their pretext, I would pursue them as I would do wild beasts; and every other person who might appear with the like intentions, as those which had brought them. This last threat seemed to make considerable impression on my Hottentots; who on hearing the noise, had assembled around my tent. When it came to their turn to be interrogated respecting the secret abode of these spies, whom they had harboured in so criminal a manner in my camp, not one of them ventured to utter a single word in his own defence. I therefore gave vent to very cutting and severe reproaches, and threatened to put the first of them to death who should dare to direct his steps towards that quarter in which the planters lived, with whom I wished them to have no communication whatever. As for Slinger, I treated him in a very harsh manner, and positively discharged him ever to leave his station without leave from me.

Those of the Caffres, who were beside me during this scene, having remarked, that I had more than once alluded to them by my gestures, they seemed to be alarmed at marks of anger which were displayed in my looks, and by the consternation that prevailed among my Hottentots. They readily perceived how much I was incensed against them for what had passed in my camp; but as they understood less of our language than I understood
of

of theirs, they were as much surpris'd as uneasy at all this noise. By their eyes, which they turned first to one side and then to another, and fixed sometimes on our countenances, they expressed the perplexity and suspense with which their minds were agitated. Hans, however, took care to explain this enigma, and I thought that they then became much more compos'd; but when he inform'd them that the planters had taken shelter so near us, they were plung'd into the utmost distress. They imagin'd that, being inform'd by the four spies, whom I had dismissed, of their abode with me, these treacherous and vindictive white men would immediately hasten to attack them, and to destroy them even in my camp. In vain did I endeavour to allay their fears, by assuring them that they were perfectly safe, and that I would support and protect them. I no longer beheld in them that open and sincere joy which proceeds from tranquillity of mind. They conferr'd much more than usual with one another, and appear'd as if they were concerting measures together, and wish'd only to depart, in order that they might fly from the danger that threaten'd them. Hans, who had accompanied them that evening when they retir'd to their kraal, confess'd to me next morning, that they suspected him to be a traitor who had entic'd them to me to be butcher'd, and that, consequently, I myself was not free from suspicion; that they remember'd one of these four bastard whites to have often visit'd their country, under the pretence of exchanging cattle; that, believing him to be a sincere friend, they had repos'd the greatest confidence in him, and never saw him arrive among them without testifying their joy at his presence; but that this monster soon betray'd them in the basest manner, and that he durst not afterwards appear among them, from the terror of finding, by instant death, the just reward of his perfidy.

I was likewise told by Hans, that they enter'd into a resolution to return; and that they begg'd him to prevail upon me to give them some old iron, in exchange for a few oxen which they had brought along with them. I however, flatly refus'd to grant them this article, giving them to understand that it was impossible for me to comply with their request, as I was unwilling to be accus'd

accused of having supplied them with arms against the planters; that, without any interested views, and merely from a desire of obliging them, I should, under any other circumstances, have been extremely happy to give them this mark of friendship; but that they must be sensible, as affairs then stood, that I was not at liberty to behave towards them so honourably as I wished; that, except iron, every thing I possessed was at their service; that I would give them a proof of this before their departure: and, to soften the harshness of my refusal, I added, that being desirous of continuing in friendship with the whole world, and of observing, both towards them and the planters, that strict neutrality which I had always professed, I was ready, upon every occasion, to give the same answer to their enemies, should they, when in want of arms or ammunition, come to implore my assistance in order to continue the war.

Although nothing could be more plain and accurate than this answer and the concomitant explanation, these savages, who are never discouraged by the first refusal, returned to the charge, and renewed their importunities more than once; but my resolution was formed, and upon this head I was inexorable. I was fully acquainted with the exaggerating disposition of the planters, who would not have failed to accuse me of perfidy for the least article extorted from me by their importunity, and for shewing weakness or condescension in such a delicate juncture. I do not doubt that they would have even gladly embraced this opportunity of being revenged for the contempt with which I had more than once treated them; and they would then have no longer wanted a pretence for rendering me criminal. However powerful this prudent policy might be, which induced me to behave in this manner towards them, I had still a motive of much greater weight. Being too much above the attacks of these banditti, and their atrocious conspiracies, by refusing arms to these savages against the planters, and to the latter resources against the savages, I prevented them from continuing their horrid ravages. In case either of the parties should be exhausted, as had more than once happened, I could not supply them without taking a part in their quarrels; and this conduct would have very ill

agreed with the integrity and sentiments of my heart. I even hesitated in accepting a few cattle, which were offered me by the Caffres in barter for a quantity of beads and toys, which I gave away to them when they left me.

I was very anxious that the young Caffre would continue with me; but I had no greater success in endeavouring to entice him, than his companions had in attempting to prevail on me to give them old iron. Neither my presents, nor the promises I made of leaving him at liberty to depart in case he should not find his situation agreeable with me, had any effect upon him. He withstood my solicitations with so much firmness, that I lost all hopes of having any influence over him: "I know the whites too well," said he to me; "they have done us much hurt, and still continue their injuries: were I simple enough to follow you, in vain should I require you to fulfil your promises: I should never be permitted to see my country again." From the very just prejudices entertained by his nation, who in the time of peace had sometimes frequented Bruyntjes-Hoogte, he was afraid of being treated in the same manner as the planters who inhabit that part of the country treat their slaves: and had he, from an attachment towards me, yielded with a good grace, and consented to follow me, he was not assured, he said, that I should always have it in my power to protect him, and to send him back safe. I did every thing I could to destroy this prejudice, telling him that he ought not to confound all the Dutch nation with those sanguinary and perfidious planters; that he ought also to enquire whether the people I had in my service were unhappy, or had any cause to complain; and that all of them were their own masters, and might quit me whenever they chose. In spite of all these reasons, this young man remained firm in his determination with amazing obstinacy; so that finding all my labour vain, I solicited him no farther.

The frequent hunting expeditions, and the little altercations that arose in consequence in my camp, had interrupted my easy and familiar conversation with the Caffres a good deal; but they did not make me entirely forget to procure information. I returned to this sub-
ject

ject from time to time, and they gratified my curiosity with that cordiality with which a grateful sense of my kindness had inspired them. The news of their intended departure made me still more eager to ask them questions: above all, I had not yet forgotten the unhappy people who had been shipwrecked; but they could not make me acquainted with all those particulars which I was desirous of learning. They knew only that such a misfortune had happened; but as they were established to the north-west, and still more distant from the sea, they could tell me nothing certain respecting that unhappy catastrophe. They had indeed seen the greater part of the effects carried away from the wreck of the vessel; for several hordes had bartered them for cattle, and even those who were in my camp had some of these things in their possession. One of them shewed me a piece of silver coin, which was suspended from his neck; another wore a small steel key; and they described, in the best manner they could, a trinket which they had divided into pieces. I readily guessed that it must have been a watch, the wheels and other works of which they had converted into ornaments. I was fully convinced that my conjecture was right, when having produced mine they all cried out that it was the same thing, except in colour, which they said resembled the piece of money suspended from the neck of their companion. They added, that the most beautiful articles procured from the ship had fallen into the hands of a numerous body of Caffres who lived near the sea; that, above all, they had in their possession a great deal of money; but that with respect to the people who had escaped from the waves, they had heard that some of them were found lying dead upon the beach, and that the remainder, more lucky, had reached a country where white people like me lived.

My conversation with these Caffres always concluded with repeated solicitations to accompany them to their country; but such a step, even had it been agreeable to me, would have been very inconsistent with prudence: for though I might be convinced that they were incapable of deceiving me, of attempting my life, or of robbing me of my effects; yet it was proper that they should be ignorant of the quarrels I had with my people: and that,

as the rest refused obedience, it was impossible to carry more along with me than eight. On the contrary, I was extremely happy to think that on their return they would inform their countrymen that we were strong and numerous, and that we had nothing to fear from them. Had a division taken place, they might have suspected some bad design; and there would have been nothing to prevent them, whilst amusing me among their horde, from sending out a detachment to plunder my camp, and massacre those whom I had left to defend it. When I reflected on the numberless barbarities committed by the whites, I determined to be on my guard against these savages, from whom I should have had nothing to fear under any other circumstances; and on this account also I laid it down as an established rule, which I observed with the utmost rigour, never to permit any stranger to enter my camp in the night-time. Old Swanepoel took care that this regulation should be strictly followed: we always slept separately, immured in our enclosures, and no one was even suffered to go out during the night, as the savages always chose that time to attack the whites, who were easily perceived, and could be seen at a distance, on account of their clothes. As my absence would have been publicly known among these Caffres, I should have been very uneasy for the fate of those whom I left at my camp; but as I kept from them the exact time I proposed to depart, I imagined they would infer, that when I set off I would not leave any thing behind me; for I had mentioned to them my intention to send my carriages back again to the colonies where I got them.

Upon the 21st day of November they all appeared to tell me that they were prepared for setting out. On this occasion they renewed their protestations of gratitude and friendship, promising that, wherever they passed, their first care would be to tell what they had seen; how much they were obliged to me; and in how affectionate and familiar a manner I had treated them during their long residence in my camp: and added, that the riches with which I had loaded them would awaken the envy of more than one; and that all the hordes would wait for me with the greatest impatience, and see me arrive among them with pleasure. The description which they promised

fed to give of my camp, my person, and above all of my beard, would, they said, serve those who did not know me as a mark to distinguish me by, and make me be received in a very different manner from that in which they would receive a planter. They then all turned, as if by agreement, towards my tent, over which a flag was waving, and asked me if I would not bring it with me, in order that they might be able to observe me at a distance. On my answering in the affirmative, they immediately shouted for joy; as if, not contented with the hopes I had given them that I would pay them a visit, they entertained no apprehension that I would be confounded with their detestable persecutors; and as if they had wished, from a sincere love towards me, to protect my person from every kind of insult. After the usual *tabes*, I accompanied them as far as the river, which both they and their cattle crossed by swimming; and when they reached the opposite bank, I saluted them, for the last time, with a general discharge of all my guns. They then went on their road, and getting among the valleys and thickets, they soon got out of my view.

I took a drawing of two of these people, who, with equal condescension and astonishment, suffered me to perform this operation. They are here given in the fifth and sixth plates. When these Caffres had departed, I flattered myself that my people would make some reflections on the peaceable manner in which they had lived among them; that they would be sensible how ill-founded their fear was; and that they would at last consent to accompany me. In order however that I might not appear to be anxious on this account, or for carrying my project into execution, and that I might suffer them to pursue their own inclinations, I resolved to set out immediately, for the purpose of paying a visit to the venerable Haabas, intending on my return, if I found any change in their sentiments, to move my camp and begin my journey, that they might not have leisure to repent. During the time that the Caffres remained with me, I had seen only two Gonaquas, and I was desirous of renewing my acquaintance with these worthy neighbours, and of knowing what had passed amongst them since our separation.

tion. Having repaired to their kraal alone, they testified every mark of joy as soon as they recollected me; they all crowded around me, and they called to each other, and flocked together from all quarters, so that I was soon surrounded. Haabas informed me what fears both he and his horde had entertained whilst the Caffres resided in my camp; and he asked me an hundred times whether they were acquainted with the place of his retreat. I did every thing in my power to calm his uneasiness: I told him that the Caffres entertained no hatred against the Gonaqua Hottentots, who, they were convinced, had no communication with the whites or the other Hottentots, and who, on the contrary, lived in a separate horde; that, besides this, the precise situation of their kraals was unknown to them; but that, in any event, it was the surest and best method of securing the common safety for them to remove and establish themselves somewhere else. Haabas agreed to this proposal with the greater readiness, as he placed little confidence in the fine speeches of the Caffres, since not long before they had obliged him to enter into hostilities with them: on this account, he said, it was the most prudent plan to take every precaution, and to avoid such a misfortune. Haabas had so good an opinion of me, that he asked my advice respecting the new establishment which he was about to form; and it was resolved that as soon as it could be effected he should set off for the mountains in the west, and leave the Caffrarian country which extends on the north-east side altogether.

The borders of the Sondag bounded the Caffres formerly, and their principal habitations stood on the Bruyntjes-Hoogte, some faint vestiges of which still remain. The express orders, as well as the intention of government, were, that these limits should always be accounted sacred; but the planters, who have neither the same views nor the same wisdom as a political administration, finding the lands of their defenceless neighbours much better than their own, in process of time took possession of them, and with impunity drove these people beyond the Groot Vis. The commands of the governors, becoming less and less regarded, had no effect, and their
great.

great distance encouraged these abuses, by which means they daily were more common.

During my stay with Haabas I kept myself quite private, and for several reasons I did not remain here long. Being desirous of knowing whether he could not engage some of his people to unite with those three who had voluntarily offered to accompany me when I paid my first visit to the Gonaquas, I desired him to put the question to them; and I found that there was only one who hesitated, and who at length gave a flat refusal: but as I was unwilling to use compulsion, or to afford any cause of complaint to these worthy people, I desired the three, who had readily agreed to my proposal, to meet me at my camp in the course of four days. In consequence of this arrangement they had full time to put their affairs in order, and to make ready their armour.

I could not take my carriages along with me, as I could depend at most upon no more than eight people to accompany me in my journey to Caffraria. It was necessary that I should have some oxen to carry my baggage, and I had not one accustomed to this service; we therefore agreed to make an exchange, and I promised to fulfil the terms of it as soon as I returned. All this was the business a moment. Notwithstanding the pressing entreaties of the chief, and of the whole horde, I resolved to quit them immediately; and I pretended that I had a thousand things to settle amongst my own people. I did not however behold this retreat with the same pleasure as before; I found myself crossed in every possible manner, and new obstacles seemed to arise at every step: besides this, I found myself exhausted with fatigue. Before I took leave of Haabas, I did not forget to enquire concerning my unfortunate patient; but I had no inclination to see him again. He assured me, that all the means employed till that time had been attended with no other effect than that of preserving cleanliness around his person; but that his sufferings were neither lessened, nor were there any hopes of his life. I enquired also concerning the beautiful Narina, and was informed that both she and her mother were then absent. Dreading that some of the horde were gone in search of her, I was
the

the more solicitous for this reason to set out; and after saluting Haabas, I went again to my camp.

Having got back thither, I summoned my people, one by one before me, being desirous of learning from their own mouths what were their intentions, in order to discover whether there were not some mutinous fellows amongst them, who endeavoured to inspire them with a spirit of sedition and revolt. Their answers all tended to the same purpose, and they grounded their resistance only upon the terror into which my rashness had thrown them; but, however incensed I was at this disobedience, and however disagreeable the consequences were likely to be, I had not resolution enough to reprimand them. A great many arguments pleaded for them in my mind; and I was convinced that my attachment to them was yet too strong, and satisfied that fear had alone seduced them, and had deranged their heads, the rather that they told me that they disliked the entering a country from which they never saw either white men or Hottentots return. I advised them to continue at least faithful to me, and not to lose sight of my kindness in my absence, and how much they stood indebted to their master. By their gestures and looks I could easily observe the impression which these last words made upon them, and how far I might have depended upon their affection had I not attempted to compel them to undertake this fatal journey. I promised to shew them the same attention in all time coming, and I shut myself up in my tent. But part of the night I spent in forming my plan, and thinking of means to execute it with all the caution and haste I could. The following morning, very early, I called for the Hottentots on whom I had dependance, and I again informed them that I was ready to set out with them, if they were still determined to go along with me; and, to relieve their minds of every doubt, and to shew that I was not proceeding rashly, I assured them that I had no design to penetrate far into Caffraria, if I met with no impediment, nor any sort of discontent from them; that as from the accounts I got from my messengers, I could not expect to find the king very readily, I proposed merely to visit the Caffrès, who expected me very anxiously, and then to strike off towards the east, in order to get near to the coast, where

we might probably discover the vessel which had been shipwrecked. As they all adhered to the promise which they had made me, I addressed myself to Swanepoel; and informing him that I looked upon him as another self, and completely invested him with all my authority, while I should be absent, I intreated him to superintend my camp, and maintain good order there, as I had no dependance on any other person.

On the day fixed, the three Gonaquas arrived, so that we had only now to make ourselves ready, and to lay in a store of provisions requisite for our journey. I filled two leather bags with gunpowder, which I tied in a third, to keep them from damp; and we cast balls of various sizes, made a good deal of small shot, and I took eight fuses along with me, leaving eight more to defend my camp. I then gathered together various kinds of beads and toys, which I arranged separately into bags and small boxes, and packed up a woollen coverlet, a big cloak, and some other articles, which I thought would be absolutely requisite. For my kitchen, we took only one kettle, a boiler, a little tea, salt, sugar, &c. My companions were likewise employed in rolling up their skins, mats, and utensils; and they did not neglect to desire me to lay in a proper quantity of tobacco and brandy. The bustle and commotion, and the running up and down, which these various preparations occasioned, would have been a very amusing scene to me, had my mind been at ease, and all my people inclined to follow me:—it would have afforded a noble subject for a painter. On the other hand, the astonished and dejected air of the cowards who remained, presented a singular contrast: those who were to set out exalted their voices, and looked upon them with a sort of pity; one might have said, that they no longer acknowledged them, and that they were not of the same nature. The former sufficiently shewed the uneasiness they experienced at our departure, and their dejection from the thoughts of seeing me no more upon their head: they anxiously wished to learn how long I should be away; but this had as little dependance upon me as it had on them.

Having

Having packed up our baggage, and done every thing needful, we determined to set out the day following, which was the third day of November.

Our fires being kindled in the evening, I set myself down as usual, together with all my people, in order to drink our tea; and I took this occasion to administer a gentle advice to those who were to abide in my camp. I discovered to them no mark of discontent; I even seemed to approve of their reasons; being well convinced that I should not change the fixed resolution of those who intended to accompany me: but as to the concern which they shewed for my person, I informed them, that I placed too great confidence in my brave friends who were to go along with me, not to be quite at ease. I advised them to be strictly obedient to the commands of old Swanepoel, and I promised to reward every one who should act agreeably to the good opinion which I had hitherto entertained of them from their behaviour. In a word, in order to leave no regret in their minds, and that I might efface every trace of our mutual disagreement, I commanded a general bumper to be handed about. They all drank success to our expedition, and every one retired to rest.

As I could not sleep during the night, I awakened my people by day-break; when we prepared our baggage, and got my four oxen ladened.

During our breakfast, I desired that all my dogs should be tied up: for if this step was not taken, all the pack, which foresaw the time of our off-set, and which for this reason discovered every mark of joy, as they did whenever we changed our encampment, would have immediately got before us, and dispersed themselves through the fields. I only took five of them with me.

Previous to our taking leave of one another, I took Swanepoel aside, and mentioned to him, that if I found it either hazardous or impossible to traverse all Caffraria, I would undoubtedly be back in fifteen days; but that, if he did not see me in the course of six weeks, he might set out for Camdebo, which was his own country; that I left him at liberty to take this route even before that time, if he feared that there would be the smallest hazard in continuing where he was, and that I could very easily find

find an opportunity to join him. I entreated that he would keep a watchful eye upon my people, carriages, and collections; and, in short, on the least apprehensions of danger, to put every thing in a place of shelter. If I should not return, (I added, with a visible emotion which I found it impossible at that moment to conceal), you have cause to despair of my safety, you must proceed straight for the Cape with all my people, and deliver up my property to my friend Mr Boers there.

The worthy old man, when I pronounced these last words, could not refrain from shedding tears. As he was nearly suffocated by sighs and sobbing, I attempted to console him, by engaging to attempt nothing but what seemed to be prudent. But it would have been idle for him to attempt detaining me longer: I tore myself away from his affectionate embrace, and went to my horses, oxen, and dogs.

But Kees had been before me. Attended by my eight people, one of whom carried my tent, I set out, and soon lost sight of my camp. In order to pass the river, I was forced to go along its banks for a league and a half; and having reached the opposite side, some of my people, who went thus far with me, took leave of me, and went again to the camp.

Leaving the river, we proceeded towards the north-east, which, by my plan, answered very well with the directions Hans gave me, to enter Caffraria by the broadest part. We travelled constantly under the same sort of trees which were interspersed throughout every part of this district, and the ground was overspread with very long grass, that was very inconvenient to us; but the rest of my people were greater sufferers than I was myself, because, as it was quite dry, it pricked their feet every step they took: they however partly prevented this inconvenience, by forming buskins of thongs and grass platted together. My oxen only seemed to be very well pleased with this circumstance; for, as they marched on, they fed whenever they chose, without being at the trouble to bend down their heads to the ground. We had antelopes of different kinds in our view, particularly those they call the *spring-buck*. My dogs raised a bustard, which I shot; it forms a new species, never before described,

scribed, somewhat larger than the French field-duck of Europe: the feathers of its neck before, with those of the breast and belly, are uniformly of a bluish grey colour; all the upper part of the body has a reddish tint, spotted and striped with a colour nearly black; and the voice resembles that of a toad, though stronger.

We prosecuted our journey in this way for five hours, during an excessive heat, which forced us to halt. We were, indeed, almost always sheltered by the trees, which grew very close together; but the leaves of the mimosa are so little, and so thinly scattered, that the shade, which no where darkens the place where it falls, may almost be held for nothing. This was the case in all the plain; and I remarked that the beautiful trees, like those of Auteniqua, grew upon the tops of high hills, which we could only find by going much farther.

In the course of our march, observing that my ape stopped frequently at the mimosa, took off some of the prickles with which that tree is furnished, and eat them very pleasantly, I was anxious to partake with him, the rather as I had a high opinion of his taste. It was only the greenest of these prickles, which could be eaten, and they were from two to three inches long, and as brittle as asparagus. I found myself greatly deceived by their taste; for though I at first imagined they were sweet and agreeable, very soon after a most intolerable taste of garlic, which burnt my mouth, and which the stoutest inhabitant of Marseilles could not have supported, made me spit them out again. The seeds of this tree, which Kees preferred, had produced the same effect on my taste. This smell was so stringent, that I could learn although at a good distance, by its urine, when an ape had tasted the mimosa.

Upon this tree I got a large and elegant species of caterpillar; the body was encompassed by bands of a velvet black on a beautiful greenish ground. When it turns a butterfly, the wings are almost white, with a few brown stripes and spots; the body feels to the touch like cotton for softness. I had several occasions afterwards to notice that when the mimosa is in bloom, which is usually the case about the beginning of January, the flowers are covered with a great many insects of different kinds; in the
cantons,

cantons, therefore, where this tree is found, one may gather in the greatest plenty a part of those different individuals of which this class of natural history is composed; and, by a necessary consequence, an amazing number of various birds are attracted by these insects, which are the chief part of their support.

Taking the opportunity of this first halting to take the skin from the bustard which I had shot; its flesh afforded me a meal, and my people dined upon the provisions which we had brought along with us. My oxen had fed so sumptuously during the way, that we had scarcely made a halt. When they lay down, although so heavily loaded, the grass about them was so high that they were completely hid amongst it. In the afternoon the sky became overcast, and a most dreadful storm, accompanied with thunder overtook us: but we still prosecuted our journey; for being unwilling to unload the oxen before night, and having no shelter where we dined, we should have been fully as much exposed to the rain when at rest as when in motion. About five o'clock in the evening, however, being so much worn out that we could not proceed farther, I commanded my tent to be immediately pitched. We kindled large fires; and having dried ourselves I retired to sleep, whilst my people stretched themselves along as well as they were able under their skins and mats, inclined towards the rain in the same way as screens are placed to defend houses from the scorching of the sun. The dampness of the ground soon penetrated the blanket upon which I had cast myself, though in vain, to get rest; and the rain, which fell in continued torrents, penetrated through the canvass of my tent on every side, so that I was as completely drenched as my people were.

Having made ready to set out at break of day, Hans told me that we could not be at a great distance from that kraal of the Caffres which the planters had demolished. As the rising of the sun had scattered the clouds, my courage rekindled, and I determined to proceed till I met this kraal, which seemed to promise us a convenient shelter; but as we had already marched seven hours, and had other three leagues to travel before we could come to it; and as my oxen were harrassed by fatigue, and night drew on, I determined to erect my tent, the

rather that I found myself upon the borders of a most delightful rivulet. Every league we proceeded the mimosas grew still scarcer, smaller, and more stunted, than in the places through which we had passed: the grass likewise was not so high. We indeed found that we were at this time upon very high ground. From the place where I was encamped my people pointed out a very high hill to me, which they thought they were acquainted with, and which I could distinguish more clearly by means of my spying glass. It was nearest to the encampment of Koks-Kraal, and I had repeatedly traversed it in my hunting expeditions: it was ten or twelve leagues from us at this time.

Having unloaded the oxen and pitched my tent, I made an excursion along the banks of the rivulet, which probably, after many windings, joined the river Groot-Vis; and I had the good fortune to kill a bird of the cuckoo kind, which to me was new and uncommon. Notwithstanding its affinity to that of which I have already spoken, and which Buffon describes under the name of the *green and golden cuckoo* of the Cape, I have strong reasons for making it another species: its note, besides, is entirely different. The female, more cunning than the male, made me lose a great deal of time in pursuing her, while by her tricks, which I might compare to those of a coquette, she every moment seemed to become less shy, in order to deceive my hopes the more. When I thought I had hold of her, she instantly flew to the distance of ten paces, to renew her provoking sport: at length, after amusing me in this manner for an hour, she retired to the thickest part of the wood, and after having spent my labour in vain, I was forced to return.

On my arrival at my camp, one of my hunters had just come with a gnou* which he had killed. Colonel Gordon was the first person who gave an account of this beautiful and scarce animal; and the description of it which he sent to professor Alleman, and which that learned man published, is very accurate; but it is to be regretted that the figure which accompanies it is defective and badly delineated. This animal, which in shape resembles a small ox, is no better represented in the

French

* A species of antelope.

French translation of Dr Sparrman's Voyage, because the engraver, or the person who made the drawings, not contented with giving it the chest and buttocks of a horse, has added his tail likewise, which is false, as the gnou has a tail exactly like that of an ox. The Hottentots call this antelope *nou*, preceded by that second kind of clapping which I have mentioned already. It was probably this clapping which induced Colonel Gordon to add a *g* to the proper name, which renders the pronunciation of it almost the same. Dr Sparrman writes the word *gnu*, because the *u* is pronounced *ou* in the Swedish and German languages. Translators should attend to these little variations, which may occasion errors as to the proper names of animals, which ought not to be disguised.

This night we spent very quietly, having our oxen fastened near us with large leather thongs, and our horses with reins. We indeed heard some lions roaring in the distant mountains; but we were under very little apprehensions on that account. In general our uneasiness and embarrassment in this respect had always diminished in proportion to the train that followed us.

We departed early on the 5th of the month, and arrived at the kraal of the Caffres, which we thought we had met with the preceding evening. Most of the huts were still entire, and only a few of them had been burnt. I noticed six or seven standing close together in a cluster; the rest, which might amount to about fifty or sixty, were scattered here and there in the extent of half a league. Here I found, for the first time, that these people apply themselves a little to agriculture: they sow a kind of millet, known by the name of Caffre wheat; and, in order that they may be enabled to till the ground with greater facility, each chooses that spot which appears to favour his views most, and erects his hut in the centre of it: on this account their kraals are not in one and the same place, like those of the Gonaquas or Hottentots. It is probable that those among whose huts we were had been surprised by the planters; for we found every where around us carcases and scattered limbs, half devoured by ferocious animals. Several fields of corn were ready for the hand of the reaper; but the antelopes, which are

seen in great numbers when they are not driven away by scare-crows, had damaged them considerably: my oxen, completed the devastation, being let loose here.

I established myself in my tent, and my Hottentots in the seven huts of which they took possession. As the situation of this place seemed to me very pleasant, I determined to spend several days in it; and in consequence of this resolution, we cut down a number of large branches, with which my tent was so well concealed, that it would have been very difficult to discover it. A rivulet of limpid water rolled over its pebbly bed close to us; a few mimosas interspersed here and there preserved a little coolness; and at the distance of an hundred paces from our camp, we could, if necessary, enjoy a most charming shelter, in an immense forest composed of large and magnificent trees. I often went thither to walk, especially during the great heats of the day; and it evidently appeared, from the various paths which crossed each other in a thousand different directions, that this place must have been frequented for a long time.

Here I saw many trees of the same kind as those I had met with in the Auteniqua country: the *slink-boutt*, or stinking wood, abounded in every quarter. As I have already remarked, this tree is found near the bay of Agoa also, from which it is transported by the inhabitants of the Cape, in order to be manufactured and employed in cabinet work; but the expence occasioned by the distance of that bay renders it exceedingly scarce and dear. Besides being susceptible of the finest polish, it has the valuable property of being proof against the attacks of worms; and when it grows old, it acquires a chestnut colour, the veins of which being very broad are shaded with tints more or less dark. When it is cut, and before it becomes dry, it exhales an excrementitious smell, which occasions a nausea, especially in wet weather, and when it is impregnated with water; but in proportion as it dries, it loses this noxious quality. Like all hard and compact timber, it grows slowly; but in process of time it increases in bulk and height, so as to surpass the tallest oaks.

The *geele-boutt*, or yellow wood is to be found here likewise, which takes its name from its colour. It is not

so much valued as the other for making different articles of furniture; but as it is well shaped and sells readily, it is converted into beautiful boards, planks, and beams for building. It produces a yellow fruit of the size of a plum, which is very thickly covered with small tubercles: the only part of it that can be eaten, is the kernel, which is extremely hard.

Another tree, the *roye-boutt*, or red wood, so called from the deep red colour of its bark. It is thick, but very tender, and a dye may be extracted from it. The fruit, which is of the size of an olive, is likewise red when ripe: it is eat with pleasure, and a kind of spirituous liquor is made from it by the inhabitants.

I stopped before a *kaersen boom*, or cherry-tree, which appeared to me to have no other merit than that of recalling to my view the place where I killed my four elephants, and the time when that event happened. I recollected that they readily eat the fruit and the leaves of this tree; and, as I had never tasted them, I embraced this opportunity of their being within my reach; but I was convinced that one must be an elephant to be able to endure them.

My Hottentots made me remark a tree which I had never before seen, and which they assured me had in the colonies formerly been very common. It was employed in preference to any other for making carts and waggon; but by the company only, who had expressly prohibited it to be made use of except for their works. This exclusion was the cause of its destruction, and it is now only seen in places remote from the colonies. On the other hand, the laziness of the planters suffered it entirely to decay, so that at present it is considered as a lost species. This tree, at the Cape, is called *boeken boutt*.

In the neighbourhood of small rivers and in marshy places, Caffraria often produces a kind of trees which have a great similarity to our willows. I have also often met with the wild almond tree, *wilde-amandel*, the narrow leaves and fruit of which, shaped exactly like ours, varied only in the reddish brown colour of the husk.

If some skilful botanist would traverse this delightful country which I am now describing, he would undoubtedly find objects highly worthy of his attention, and

which might prove of great advantage to science. For my own part, I directed my researches to those things only which I had never before seen, or which appeared extraordinary. Being incapable of distinguishing the real properties of trees, plants, and shrubs, I admired nothing but their striking differences; such, for example, as the moss or yellow lichen that adhered to them; all its shoots being often ten or twelve feet long: my people, in their language, called it hair; and in several cantons the trees were so overspread with it, that one could neither distinguish the trunk nor the branches, nor even a single leaf; which to me had a very singular appearance.

This moss was highly serviceable to me in the preservation of my birds; and I strongly advise such ornithologists as may be led to visit this very curious part of Africa, not to encumber themselves with tow, cotton, or any other substances of the like nature. In order that I might procure a quantity of it sufficient for my whole journey, as I was afraid of not finding it elsewhere, I desired one of these trees to be cut down and to be stripped of all its hair. The youngest and shortest is the most delicate; those which are six feet in length are harder, and can only be useful to very large birds and quadrupeds.

In almost every place where I passed, I found creeping plants likewise, which having reached the tops, and even the smallest branches of the trees, shot forth filaments that hung down to the earth. At first they are exceedingly weak and slender, but at length they attain to the size of one's arm, like those seen in America. These filaments, which are almost innumerable, bear no leaves, and the natives call them *bavians tow*, or *bavians ropes*, because, by their assistance, these apes climb to the tops of the trees in order to reach the fruit of the plants, which grows only at their extremities where the filaments begin to shoot forth. This fruit, which birds, and particularly the touracos, are exceedingly fond of, contains in its pulp a few round and flat seeds: it is of the size of a cherry, and has a crimson colour. I speak here of the fruit of a particular species of these plants, which is called the wild grape, on account of the great resemblance its leaves have to those of the vine. These natural ropes will sustain the weight of a man, if the branch from which they

they are suspended be sufficiently strong: this cherry is excellent, and very proper for making a kind of spirituous liquor; it is still better when preserved. I have often, in imitation of the *bavians*, climbed by the help of these cords, to the tops of the trees, to gather the fruit, and sometimes to collect insects.

There were two species of antelopes, with which these woods abounded also, not at all wild: the *bofboc*, which I had observed in other places, and that named by the Hottentots *noumetjes*. Of the latter I had only a slight view in the country of Auteniqua; it is not uncommon, but it is very difficult to get so near it as to kill it. Besides this, it seldom makes its appearance in the plains, but keeps itself concealed in the bushes and thickest parts of the forests. At the utmost it is no more than twelve or fifteen inches high; the horns of the male are straight, smooth, and distant about a hand breadth from each other. This little animal is of a mouse grey colour, which, on the ridge of the back, assumes a reddish tint: but the belly and the inside of the thighs are white. From the elegance of its form, it may easily be seen that it is exceedingly nimble; it sometimes takes surprising leaps, and squats down like a hare. If any one happens to get near it, as soon as it perceives him, it instantly runs off as quick as lightning, and then stops at some distance to examine its pursuer. This is the only opportunity one can have of firing at it; and the hunter must, without loss of time, embrace it, for it lasts only for a moment. Its cry, which I ought rather to call its warbling, is very long and shrill: it would be in vain for me to attempt to imitate it. It begins by a broken kind of whistling, the tones of which are like those of a tabour hung round with little bells; and its goat-like voice imitates them exceedingly well: one would hardly conceive that so small an animal could make so loud a noise; when I heard it for the first time I imagined that I was dreaming. Its flesh, more delicate than that of any other antelope, was to us a most delicious treat. I shall give an account, with a figure of this animal, in my description of the African quadrupeds.

Among other new birds of this canton, I shot a small eagle, which had a very long crest that hung down behind.

hind its head; and I named another bird the *king's hunter**, from the resemblance of its form to that of the king's fisher. Its bill, which is long, is of a red colour; the back, the wings, and the tail, are of a lively blue: it feeds upon insects, inhabits only the woods, and makes its nest in hollow trees. In my ornithology I shall not neglect this beautiful bird.

We had nothing remarkable in this encampment, except that, during the whole time of our residence here, we regularly experienced every evening, between three and four o'clock, severe storms, which did not much incommode us, because they were of short duration. On the 9th of the month we packed up our baggage and again set out, when my Hottentots, according to their custom of giving names to places from some circumstance that has happened in them, called the kraal which we left the *Camp of Slaughter*. Having advanced straight towards the east, and traversed a canton all the grass of which had been a prey to the flames, a fresh verdure that began to shoot up under our feet formed a most beautiful green carpet. At every step we met whole flocks of spring-bucks, gnous, and ostriches. As we had more provisions than were necessary, we did not fire at these antelopes. I only discharged my fusée at a few ostriches; but being too suspicious to suffer any one to approach near them, I could not kill one of them. In proportion as we advanced, the antelopes gathered themselves into a body to see us pass; and the heat was so intense, and perspiration so abundant, that a cloud of vapour arose from the middle of these innumerable flocks. In the course of our march I killed partridges sufficient to dine all my people, but we did not stop to regale on them till we had fatigued ourselves by continuing our journey for full five hours more. About which time a heavy rain came, one as usual that refreshed us much. Throughout all this canton I observed the traces of oxen, which indeed seemed to be very old; but I was surprised that so fine a country should be entirely destitute of inhabitants, and that we did not meet with a single Caffre. Hans pretended that the alarm had been too general; and though we had already travelled thirty leagues, I began to despair

* *Martin chasseur.*

pair of seeing even one kraal: every thing seemed to announce that these people had retired farther towards the centre; and I conjectured that if we should meet with any of the inhabitants, they could only be spies from the hordes, who, desirous of promoting the public good, ranged the country, and kept themselves concealed in ambush.

While familiarly conversing with my people, I saw a small flock of antelopes, which, passing quite close to us, made off full speed, being pursued by a pack of seventeen wild dogs. I immediately mounted my horse, and set out on a full gallop to defend the antelopes and to attack the wild dogs; but I unluckily soon lost sight of them both. As the ground was covered with pebbles concealed under the grass, my horse stumbled at every step, and we both narrowly escaped having our necks broke. Returning therefore very deliberately in order to join my people, an ostrich started up at the distance of twenty paces from me; and as I doubted whether it might not be a female which had been sitting, I hastened to the spot from which I saw it depart, where I found eleven eggs still warm, and four more scattered at the distance of two or three feet from the nest. Having called to my companions, who instantly flocked round me, I ordered them to break one of the warm eggs, in which we perceived a young one completely formed, and of the size of a chicken when ready to burst its shell. I imagined that all these eggs were spoiled; but my people thought otherwise. Each of them endeavoured to fall upon the nest; and Amiroo, taking up the other four, desired me to eat them, assuring me that I should find them excellent. I here learned from this savage a circumstance which my Hottentots themselves were ignorant of, and which is even unknown to naturalists, since no one whom I know speaks of it. This fact, which I have often afterwards had an opportunity of verifying, is, that the ostrich always deposits near her nest a certain number of eggs, proportioned to those which she destines for incubation. As she never sits upon these eggs, they will keep fresh a long time, and the provident instinct of the mother sets them apart for the first nourishment of the young produced from the rest. Experience convinced

ced me of the truth of this assertion; and every time I met with an ostrich's nest, I found several of the eggs separated in the same manner. I shall enlarge more on this interesting subject, when I describe these singular birds.

About half an hour after seven in the evening, I stopped near a considerable pond formed by the rain water, as my oxen had not got any when we halted at noon, and as I was not sure of having an opportunity of refreshing them if I advanced farther. When our fires were lighted, each cooked his eggs after his own manner; having taken off the skin from one of those which were reserved for me, my Hottentots put a little grease into it, after it had been half buried in red hot ashes, and stirring it with a wooden spoon, they made of it what is called a broiled egg, which, if I remember right, might be equivalent to at least a dozen of hen's eggs; but, notwithstanding my voracious appetite, and the exquisite taste of this new food, I could only eat the half of it. Several of my people, after taking out the young which they found in theirs, made an omelet of the rest. I questioned them, with some pleasantry, respecting their fine ragouts of these half hatched eggs, and I could not help concluding that they must be infectious; on this account I was desirous of tasting them, and if I had not been blinded by prejudice, I should have found no difference between them and mine, and should have eat them with as much satisfaction.

The evening was spent very cheerfully; but during the night this was not the case; for we were all kept awake by the constant barking of our dogs, which was the more disagreeable, as our ears were assailed by no other noise. As this uproar was not occasioned by any wild beast, for it would soon or late have made its appearance, our suspicions fell upon the savages, and I began to be apprehensive of some treachery. Day at length appeared, but it did not bring back tranquillity, and all the search which we made in the neighbourhood proved entirely fruitless. We did not know whether the people whom we dreaded were Caffres, or some of those plunderers called the Boshmen: the dryness of the ground and the grass, in the spot where we were encamped, did

not

not permit us to discover their traces ; and on the 10th, without learning any thing farther, we departed, keeping still towards the east. This direction conducted us to a canton, in which the mimosas were in so great abundance, and so tall and bushy, that they formed a real forest. After passing through it we met with a small river, which we were fortunate enough to be able to ford, and marched two full leagues along its banks ; but as night was about to overtake us we encamped.

Our guide having informed us, that three leagues farther we should at length find the kraal of those Caffres who had solicited me to pay them a visit, I was the more desirous of seeing it, as it was very curious and ancient ; and as this place is extremely commodious and well known to the savages, it seldom remained vacant, so that the horde was exceedingly numerous. That we might not discover ourselves, I ordered my people not to fire at any game whatever ; and when my tent was erected, and our fires kindled, we remained around them till late at night. After this, in order to deceive the enemy, in whose promises I prudently placed very little confidence, I ordered some fresh branches to be thrown into these fires, to keep them burning till day-light, and we then went and laid ourselves down on mats at the distance of fifty paces farther. We slept undisturbed ; and next morning Hans, with two of my Hottentots well armed, setting out before, I appointed them to meet us at a place two leagues distant from us, that is to say, within a league of the kraal, and to come immediately and give us an account of what they had seen. In two hours they returned, and informed me, with equal grief and astonishment, that they had found the kraal in very good condition, but that, like the rest, it was absolutely deserted ; upon which I continued my route to the spot, and took possession of this new empire. In this kraal, which was uncommonly extensive, we found above an hundred huts very ancient to appearance, and constructed with great solidity ; they were distributed in the ordinary manner, and at the usual distances, and it seemed that the inhabitants had been alarmed without cause, for we saw no ruins, and not a single dead body. In one of the huts they had forgot two assagays ; and in another a woman's small apron, a few wooden utensils for tilling

tilling the earth, and some other trifles of very little value: these different objects I took possession of. The small corn-fields did not here exhibit, as in the first kraal where we stopped, a picture of desolation and destruction; on the contrary, it appeared that the crops had been carried away in peace. We resolved to stop here two or three days, in order to distribute a few scouts at a distance, and to see if we could not find out some Caffres in the neighbourhood. I well knew that by going directly northward I should fall in with the centre of Caffraria, which I above all things wished to avoid, as I thought it better to advance gradually towards it by long circuits, and not to expose myself, but in proportion as I should see the dangers lessened, and according to the information which I might get by the way. All our stratagems, and all our endeavours, however, were fruitless, for not one Caffre was to be seen.

I will be candid enough to own, that, from my own prejudice, and the pompous descriptions of the magnificence and luxury of the Asiatic despots, I thought I should find at least some appearance of them in the territories of the king of the Caffres. I was inspired by this idea with a very strong desire of seeing Faroo; but I no longer met with the same food for my curiosity, after the last guests whom I had received in my camp, and who generally resided near, had told me that this prince, without any particular train, inhabited, like the meanest of his subjects, a hut which was neither larger nor better ornamented than the rest; that, like them, he might become very poor, if a mortality prevailed among his cattle; that his subjects were not obliged to pay him either subsidies or taxes; that he had no right to touch their property; that, in a word, he was nothing more than a plain chief, as among the Hottentots: that the only remarkable difference between the chief and the rest was, that his place was hereditary; but that, destitute of every external decoration, and of every badge of royalty, his power was very limited.

From these accounts, many of those brilliant ideas which my imagination had formed respecting this king began to vanish; and as I could gain nothing by seeing him, and as I despaired of meeting with him, my views were

were wholly directed towards the shipwrecked vessel. The relations of my Caffres gave me very little hopes of being able to satisfy myself on this point; yet I pursued my course towards the coast, always full of the chimerical notion that I should obtain more certain information with regard to it.

We found nothing but deserted huts in every part of our way, without seeing a single inhabitant, or any traces of the human race. In order, however, to indemnify us for this loss, all the places through which we passed abounded with buffaloes, antelopes, and in general with every sort of game, which proves, better than idle reasoning, that the Caffres are not so much addicted to hunting as the Hottentots; that they trust less to hopes, and that they depend more on their corn and flocks than on the resources of their skill and dexterity in wielding their assegays and clubs. We saw several elephants, but they did not permit us to come near enough to fire at them.

Since my departure from Koks-Kraal, I had formed so large a collection of birds, that I knew not where to put them; it was certainly more embarrassing by its size than its weight, notwithstanding my constant care, to place every individual flat, not to occupy room after I had preserved them.

We passed the small river on the 15th; having followed it this far, to avoid barren and steep hills which were in our view; after this we were obliged to turn off towards the south, because, not finding any beaten track, we were forced to direct our course according to circumstances and the nature of the ground. In the course of our march I sprung a bustard a little before me, which I killed: it had been sitting on two eggs, which contained young ready to burst the shell, and covered with their first down. I was extremely happy that chance procured me this bird, which was entirely new to me; and it appeared that the male and the female sit on the eggs alternately. The one I killed, which was a male, had a very large and thick crest, like a capuchin, on the hinder part of its head. The female, which soon came and hovered around the spot, seemed to watch us, and from time to time sent forth a very hoarse cry. I had flatter-

ed myself that I should be able to kill her also, and with this view I left the two eggs in the nest: but as in all the neighbourhood I could find no place to conceal myself so as to be from her sight, she never came near; I therefore gave up my intention, and proceeded.

There is every probability that there was not one Caffre in all that part of the country which we had hitherto passed through, for the reports of our musquets, which we fired constantly for some days, either in our marches or in our different encampments, must have discovered us, and conducted them towards us, as they are far from being timorous. During our journey we were not, however, all of the same opinion on this subject, which formed the usual grounds of our conversation; some pretending that there must be Caffres in the canton, but that, not being numerous, they did not venture to appear; and others maintaining that there were none, since we had not been attacked by them: but when we came to deliberate what conduct we ought to pursue when we should meet them, all my people lost themselves in absurdity, and formed the most ridiculous and impracticable plans for our defence. I alone was of opinion that it would be proper to sustain the first discharge of their weapons without returning it, and to endeavour, by gentle means, to come to an explanation before we used our arms, which would secure us the advantage, should we be compelled to have recourse to them. I entertained no doubt that this method would succeed should we be attacked in the day time; but if in the night, the case would have been different. In this prudent plan of accommodation I however saw difficulties almost insurmountable; and it was to shun every species of adverse fortune that we had made it a constant rule to sleep at least fifty paces from my tent, over which I was careful to leave my flag constantly floating, so as to be seen at a great distance. By this little scheme we were secured from the first alarm at any rate.

But amidst all our fears, we continued our courses and hunting parties. Water turned more scarce by degrees, and I began to entertain very serious doubts. One day, when the weather was cloudy, which enabled us to make a very agreeable and gentle march for more
than

than six hours, I perceived Kees stop all of a sudden, turn his face and nose towards the wind, and begin to run, with all my dogs after him, none of which made the least noise. Astonished at this new spectacle, and perceiving nothing that could particularly attract them, I made haste to come up with them; but what was my surprise when I found them all collected around a beautiful spring, at the distance of three hundred paces from the place whence they had set out! Having discovered this I signed with my hand to my people to advance, which they did immediately, and we encamped hard by this delightful spring, to which we gave the name of the magician, who first observed it.

I shall have frequent occasion to call to mind remarkable benefits I got from the animals I had with me; and upon this occasion they delivered me from a terrible affliction, under which I must have inevitably sunk but for their help. I never doubted that man received from his Creator the same faculties in an equal proportion, but his corruption has insensibly deprived him of them all. The savages approaching nearer to nature in proportion as they are removed from us, have likewise every sense more acute; and I myself (I hope my assertion will not be doubted), after passing five or six months in the deserts where, following their example, I turned my face from the one side to the other, and was in the issue able, like them, to discover either a river or a pond, and in no instance failed to find them out.

Determined to spend the night at Kees-fountain, I took the opportunity of a little leisure to prepare the bustard I had killed; and as the distant clouds gathering together appeared to prognosticate a storm, I desired that the oxen should be unloaded, and that my tent should be set up.

The rain came on in great quantities before night; but did not last long, and had scarcely stopped when I began to range all the neighbourhood around in search of small birds. In a spot, not far from our encampment, I perceived two of those golden yellow serpents, so common and well known in the colonies under the name of *kuoper-capel*, start up at my feet. These reptiles, as soon as they saw me, reared themselves erect, swelling up their heads

prodigiously, and hissing in a most frightful manner. As I knew that the bite of these animals is mortal, and that the faculty which they have of darting forwards renders them more dangerous, I discharged my piece, upon which one of them fell down dead, while the other entered its hole. Having seized the one which remained, I found that it was five feet three inches in length, and nine inches in circumference in the thickest part: besides an infinite number of very small teeth, hardly perceptible, with which its mouth was armed, it had on each side of the upper jaw, as high as the nostrils, a hook five lines long, playing upon its joint, and which it could extend in the same manner as a cat or a tiger extends its claws. One of these my Hottentots broke; and, as I was very fond of hearing them discourse upon natural history, because, perhaps, I found more truth in the rude reasoning of habit and experience than in the ingenious speculations of our literati, I asked them several questions concerning my serpent, which they answered in a much more satisfactory manner than I expected. They did not fail to point out to me, among other singularities, that this hollow tooth was the conductor which conveyed the poison into the wound that it made. Such is, if I mistake not, the case with the *boicininga*, or the rattle snake, which I have frequently found in South America.

Upon this occasion I remarked, the dread which apes are in for these animals. I could not possibly make Kees come near the serpent that I had got possession of, though it was entirely dead. In order to amuse myself, I found means however to fasten it to his tail; so that not being able to make any motion without moving the serpent also, it may easily be conceived what leaps and jumps poor Kees took, and with what fury and anxiety he remained during all the time which I kept his fatal enemy fastened to him.

Upon the approach of night, we discovered a large fire, which we supposed, as far as the darkness would permit us to judge, to be on the top of some hill, at the distance of about three leagues from us. Notwithstanding this distance, concerning which we were not certain, my Hottentots thought they perceived the shadows of some men passing backwards and forwards before the fire,
and

and my spying-glass soon convinced me that they were not mistaken; but we were ignorant whether they were Caffres, or those detestable Boshmen, enemies to every nation without distinction, and plunderers by profession, from whom we could expect no kind of friendship. We supposed however that they belonged to these last, as the Caffres never live in the mountains; we consequently took the precaution to put out our fires, and spent the remainder of the night very quietly.

We made it our first employ when we got up, to attempt to discover with more accuracy, at what place, and by whom, the fire we had observed the evening before, had been kindled. The weather was exceedingly favourable for observing the smoke, but it appeared that the fire was extinguished, for we saw nothing more of it. Being thus deprived of a fixed point of direction, we set out to enter the hollow defiles, where we were likely to be in danger of losing ourselves. Nevertheless, as my Hottentots, persuaded that these people were not Caffres, appeared willing to pursue their route that way at the risk of every thing that might happen, and as our plan naturally conducted us thither, we quickly packed up our baggage, and bid adieu to Kees fountain.

We were forced to go through a kind of wood, in which the mimosas were so numerous, so thick, and so encumbered with bushes, that we could hardly proceed ten steps without being obliged to stop in order to force our way, which impeded us much, especially as our oxen continually turned from one side to the other to search for a passage. We however at length got clear of this tedious forest; but I am persuaded that, after so much fatigue, and so many turnings and windings, which continued for the space of three hours, we were not more than a league from Kees-fountain. There was a thicket before us, nearly like that which we had just passed; and, in order to steer clear of it, we took a circuit, in a direction inclining more to the south-west side.

Sweating, dusty, and overcome with heat, after marching more than six hours, we stopped on the banks of a lake, which luckily happened to be in our way. One of my dogs, which had heated himself very much by run-

ning after game, was here in great danger of perishing; and I should have indeed lost him, had it not been for Jan, who, perceiving him in the water, instantly rushed forwards to drag him from it. I mention this circumstance, which to many readers may appear trifling, merely for the purpose of establishing a fact which I have been eye-witness of in Africa: as soon as an over-heated dog plunges into the water to cool himself, he expires, unless speedy assistance be given him. In a hunting expedition I had with Mr Boers, a large grey-hound, which had got about an hundred paces before his carriage, having cast himself into a rivulet that lay in our road, when we came up he was found dead.

We had scarce encamped and refreshed ourselves a little, when I sent off some Hottentots to make discoveries, especially in that quarter from which we had been principally incommoded, during the night. In less than an hour I heard from this detachment; for one of my people came back in great haste to inform me, that he had perceived a body of Caffres in full march; and having conducted me and Hans by several windings, he at length brought us to a spot where we had an opportunity of judging for ourselves. We indeed saw ten men, who were quietly driving before them a few horned cattle; and as we had nothing to fear from so small a number, we made our appearance at a certain distance. As soon as these people observed us, they betook themselves to flight, being frightened, above all, by our fire-arms; but Hans calling out to them in their own language that they might advance boldly, they immediately stopped. Going forward, therefore, to speak to them, when they were convinced that I was a friend to the Caffres they all approached me; and having received them very politely, I stretched out my hand, and saluted them with a *tabe*. The sight of my beard dispelled their terror; for they had heard mention made of me by those whom I received in my camp at Koks-Kraal, and one of them knew Hans, whom he had seen in his own country. I conducted them altogether, with their cattle, to my encampment, and regaled them with tobacco and brandy. They pointed to my flag, to give me to understand that they were well informed respecting me; and they seemed to be much
astonished

astonished not to see my carriages, and my whole troop. As I was unwilling to let them know how much they were dreaded by the Hottentots, I informed them that I merely wanted to make a little trip into the heart of the country to get information, and then pass through it when I could do it at leisure.

They had a great anxiety to know where the planters were at this time; if they were still pursuing them, and what might be their purpose. Upon this head I gave them all the information which I thought prudent. I had seen the planters who had retired to Bruntjes-Hoogte keep there themselves on the defensive, agitated by terror as much as the Caffres themselves. The latter told me, that, to reach the nearest hordes of their nation, it would be necessary to continue my journey for full five days more. Calculating therefore the distance which separated these people from the planters, and which I reckoned to be nearly sixty leagues, I could, without deceiving them, allay their fears, and convince them that the latter were neither disposed nor in a condition to undertake so long a journey. These poor people were in such a wretched situation that I could not help pitying them, for they had never been harassed in such a manner as they were at that time; besides the losses which they had sustained in men and cattle by the attacks of the white people, they were daily exposed to others from the Tambouchis, a neighbouring nation, who, taking advantage of their critical situation, over-ran several of the cantons of Caffraria, and put every thing to the sword that they met with; so that, oppressed on both sides by this diversion, the Caffres, destitute of warlike stores and unable to defend themselves, retreated as fast as possible, and penetrated farther to the north, to shun two enemies whom they could not withstand; while the Boshmen, a third enemy, no less to be dreaded, plundered and butchered them wherever they came in their way.

By all the information these people gave me, I was amazed that they had straggled so far from their horde; and that they wandered as chance directed, without knowing whither to direct their course. They however told me, that on the first incursion made by the whites, they had suddenly driven their flocks, all in confusion,
either

either towards the sea coast, or to other remote parts of Caffraria; but that hearing no accounts of any new hostilities, they had ventured to quit their hordes, and to go in quest of their dispersed cattle, in order to bring them back again. They had indeed about thirty along with them; and when I mentioned the fire which we had observed in the night-time, they assured me that it was kindled by them; but that they had not seen mine, which would have alarmed them much. Having questioned them respecting the vessel which had been shipwrecked, they only repeated what had been told to me by others; which was, that a ship had really been lost on the coasts of Caffraria. After this information, I concluded that this misfortune had happened beyond the country of the Tambouchis, opposite to Madagascar, and towards the channel of Mosambique. They added, that, without mentioning other difficulties which must be encountered in their territories, it would be necessary, besides other rivers, to pass one which was too broad to be crossed by swimming, or to advance a great way towards the north to find a place where it could be forded; that they had seen several white people among the Tambouchis; that they themselves had purchased, by barter, several articles from these people; and, above all, a great number of nails procured from the wreck of the vessel; but that, being then at war with the Tambouchis, they could not get any more iron from them, though they were in great want of that commodity. They then entreated me to give them a little, the usual petition of these miserable creatures, which I little looked for, but I answered their ungracious request with a mortifying denial.

To make them amends, I distributed among them all the beads, toys, tinder-boxes, tinder, and a large portion of tobacco I had; in barter for which they desired I would accept two of their oxen: I however replied, that instead of taking from them a blessing so valuable to unfortunate people, I wished rather to be in a situation that might enable me to augment the number of their cattle. This mark of kindness touched them the more, as they consider the white people to be the most dangerous and mischievous beings in the world. With that ingenuous and sincere modesty which is ever afraid of hurting those

on whom it bestows praise, they made a confession to me which remained long imprinted in my memory: Hans declared to me, in their name, and in very energetic terms, that I resembled the only *worthy man* of my race whom they had ever met with; some years before they had seen this worthy man on the Bothman river, the banks of which they then inhabited, and from which the planters had never yet been able to expel them: he was, as they said, a man who, like me, travelled merely for curiosity. I could easily perceive that they alluded to Colonel Gordon; and they were extremely happy to understand that we lived in strict friendship together: they even begged me to intercede with him when I returned to the Cape, and to influence him to give government a genuine and affecting account of their misery, and of the wretched state into which they had been placed by the base injustice of their tormentors.

I employed all this day in talking with these Caffres as to their manners, customs, religion, taste, and resources; and I always found that their answers corresponded with what had been related to me by those whom I had first seen. They told me, with equal sincerity, whatever tended to criminate themselves, or to do them honour; and my Hottentots found them so peaceable and unsuspecting, that they requested at night that I would permit them all to remain amongst us. I continued to converse with them for some time, and then went to my tent, to prepare for the labours of the following morning.

At day-break, whilst the Caffres were preparing to depart, I assembled my Hottentots. The reflections which their familiarity with these savages, of whom they were more afraid than of wild beasts, enabled them to make, and their conversation with one another when I had retired to my tent, made me immediately resolve what course to pursue. As I did not wish to give them an opportunity of acquiring any merit from determining what plan was best to be adopted in the present case; but, on the contrary, apprehending that they might borrow from me those ideas of prudence and composure useful to my designs, whatever they might in future be; I told them, that after what they, as well as I, had heard the preceding evening, as to the difficulties of advancing farther,
and

and the danger of being attacked by the Tambouchis and the Boshmen who were traversing Caffraria, my intention was to return to Koks-Kraal; that in consequence of this, if we directed our course towards the west, we could not fail of falling in with the river Groot-Vis, and that then, by going up its banks for several days, according as things might appear, we should undoubtedly soon reach our camp: I however added, that they were all at liberty to give their opinion on the proposal which I had made. I could see too plainly, by the looks of all my people, what pleasure they received from my resolution; and they all gave me the honour of starting an idea to which they had as much pretension as I. My collection was now become so bulky, that I had no hopes of increasing it, for I hardly knew how to dispose of it.

Afterwards I told them, that when I reached Koks-Kraal I would stay no longer there than would be necessary to repair our carriages, and to prepare for going towards the snow mountains, from which I intended to proceed to the Cape by keeping more to the westward. I knew that this plan was not approved by any of my people, because in traversing these dry and barren deserts, in the time of the greatest drought, we would be under the necessity of encountering more than one difficulty; but being anxious to take a view of the natural curiosities contained in this country, I had formed an unalterable resolution of crossing it, and the overture I made was only a stratagem to reconcile early to this idea such of my Hottentots as I had with me, in order that, when we returned to my camp, they might be better able to inspire their companions with confidence, and to testify the greater astonishment at their resistance, should they shew any.

I distributed among these Caffres, as well as among my Hottentots, a quantity of tobacco; and I reserved no more than was sufficient to serve us till we returned to our camp. This made room for the birds with which we were encumbered, and also for those that I might be able to procure by the way. These ten savages assisted us to pack up our baggage and to yoke our oxen; after which we wished one another a good journey, and set

out to pursue two opposite routes, we towards the south, and they towards the north.

During three days, spent in reaching the so much wished for banks of the Groot Vis, nothing remarkable happened. This forced march having fatigued both us and our cattle considerably, I determined to pass the next day on the banks of the river, for the purpose of getting ourselves refreshed, and to see what discoveries I might make in the neighbourhood. At this time we were under no uneasiness as to water, and we had been in no want of it during the three days that we employed in searching for the river, which we knew would conduct us to the place of our destination; but we could not precisely ascertain the time which might be necessary to follow its course to our camp. It was possible that high mountains and other obstacles might oblige the Groot Vis, before it discharged itself into the sea, to form some bendings, which must have greatly prolonged our journey. We went along its banks very peaceably for three days more, still keeping close to it; and at length, on the morning of the fourth, we perceived the high mountain, the back part of which we had seen soon after our departure. At this sight my people shouted for joy. We were now about to revisit our camp, our herds, our riches, and our companions; we therefore quickened our pace, and, late in the evening, unobserved, reached the happy spot. All were sunk in the most profound tranquillity, and nothing could have given me more pleasure than the agreeable surprise of this precipitate arrival. The horrid noise made by my dogs immediately spread the alarm; all hastened towards us; they knew our voices; and, even to the most insensible animals, all appeared to share in the general joy: above all, we could not disengage ourselves from my dogs, which teased us by their caresses and stunned us with their barking. Another spectacle however appeared to me no less interesting: my family had increased considerably: on my departure a small detachment from the worthy Gonaquas had quitted their horde, and had established themselves in the same place which I assigned to the Caffres, where they had constructed several new huts. They informed me, and indeed I plainly saw by the admirable order that prevailed in the camp, that every thing
had

had been quiet during my absence : we had been the whole subject of conversation to those we had left. Every evening Swanepoel gave me the most favourable accounts of each separately ; he told me, that the first fifteen days having elapsed without hearing any news of me, he could not avoid entertaining a little fear, and that he was apprehensive he should not see me till I returned to the Cape, as he was persuaded that, if I met with no insurmountable obstacles, I would still proceed as long as my ammunition lasted.

Having been for nearly a month deprived of the comforts and enjoyments of my camp, I must own, that I was very happy to find myself returned ; and I had the highest satisfaction in the fidelity and attachment of these Hottentots, so feeble and timid, whom I had not been afraid to abandon to themselves. It was therefore now time that I should give a proof of my gratitude : on this account I proclaimed with a loud voice that it was *Saturday* ; and this declaration, which passed from mouth to mouth even to the Gonaquas, seemed still to add to their agitation. This circumstance requires some explanation, which I shall give with fresh pleasure ; for the remembrance of these trifling but agreeable methods I pursued to vary my amusements, and in an uninhabitable desert to convert the simplest object into a subject of pleasantry and entertainment, announces the greatest tranquillity, and makes me, even when surrounded by the arts, and agitated by pride and vanity, lament that I can no longer distinguish my own character.

On setting out from the Cape, I did not forget to carry an almanack with me ; but in order to have some certain method of reckoning, and to keep my journal correct, I made all the months to consist of thirty days. As I never passed one without giving an account of it, I considered it as a matter of indifference whether or not I distinguished the weeks, and marked the days by their proper names, but I resolved to distribute among my Hottentots their allowance of tobacco every Saturday. If it happened that, not choosing to give myself the trouble of consulting my book, I asked them what the day was, I was at no loss to guess what answer they would give me ; according to their calculation it was always Saturday ;

day : so that, after travelling fifteen months, when I looked at my register, I found seven or eight of these Saturdays which belonged to no week.

As usual, I found myself therefore surrounded by my numerous family ; and whilst all of them, and even the Gonaqua women, were smoking their pipes round a large fire, and enjoying a double portion of brandy, I regaled myself very cheerfully with my tea.

Having mentioned to them the route I meant to pursue next day, I found that they were already informed of it, and that they made fewer remonstrances and objections than I expected. I perceived that my journey was drawing to an end ; and that every one, exhausted by fatigue, seemed to think any road good that would bring us nearer to the Cape ; but the passage through the mountains of *Snew-Bergen*, the usual haunt of the Boshmen, made more than one of my brave attendants tremble. I fixed my departure for the eighth, in order that I might have time to repair my carriages, to make new wooden work to support the top of that in which I rode, to cover the canvass of it with new mats, to replace our old traces from the hides of the buffaloes killed during my absence, and to cast balls and small shot. All this required considerable time ; and no less was requisite to arrange the collection which I had formed in Caffraria, and to consign to my journal the result of my researches respecting that country and its inhabitants. For the sake of expedition, my people exerted themselves a good deal ; and I shut myself up in my tent, and hastened, while the observations I made were still fresh in my memory, to put them into some order.

If I may judge of the Caffres from those I have seen, they are in general taller than the Hottentots, and even than the Gonaquas ; they however approach much nearer to the latter ; but they appear to be more robust, more fierce, and much bolder. Their figure is also more agreeable, and their countenances have not that narrowness at bottom, nor their cheeks those prominences which are so disagreeable among the Hottentots ; neither have they those broad flat faces and thick lips of their neighbours, the negroes of Mosambique. A round figure, a nose not too flat, a broad forehead, and large eyes, give

them an open and lively air; and if prejudice can overlook the colour of the skin, there are some Caffre women who, even when seated by an European lady, would be accounted extremely pretty. The fifth and sixth plates represent a Caffre man and a Caffre woman drawn from nature. These people do not make their faces ridiculous by pulling out their eye-brows like the Hottentots; they tattoo themselves much, and particularly their bodies: they do not grease their hair, which is frizzled in a very great degree; but this is not the case with respect to the rest of their body, and they follow this custom entire with a view to preserve strength and agility.

In general the men bestow more attention on their dress than the women; and they are particularly fond of beads and copper rings. They, for the most part, wear bracelets on their arms and legs, made of elephants tusks, which they form into natural rings, of greater or less thickness, by sawing through the hollow part; after which they make them round on the outside, and give them a fine polish. As these large rings do not open, they must be of such a size that the hand can pass through them, in order that they may be put upon the arm; on which account they are always easy, and move up and down one against the other. If small rings of this kind are given to children, in proportion as they grow old the vacuum is filled up; and as they then clap quite close to the arm, they become a luxury which is highly pleasing to those who have been thus decorated in their youth. They make necklaces also of the bones of animals ranged on a string, which they have the art of whitening and polishing in the most perfect manner. Some of them are contented with the whole bone of a leg of mutton; and this ornament makes a very conspicuous figure on the breast of a Caffre: it has the same effect as a patch on the face of a pretty woman in Europe. The Gonaqua women, as may be seen in the plate which represents them, practise the same coquetry. They substitute sometimes for this bone the horn of an antelope, or any thing else, according to their caprice; and I am of opinion, that one would see as many varieties, and as many fantastical ornaments in their dress, as are seen in Europe, provided they had the same means and the same resources.

They

They, however, always employ the same materials, because they have no kinds of stuff to supply the place of those skins with which they clothe themselves. It would appear that they are not so chaste as the Hottentots, because they do not use a jackal to veil what nature bids them conceal. A small cowl, which covers only the glans, instead of displaying modesty, seems to announce the greatest indecency. This small covering adheres to a thong, which is fastened round their girdles merely that it may not be lost; for a Caffre, if he is not afraid of being hurt or stung by insects, cares very little whether this cowl be in its place or not. I never saw but one man who, instead of a cowl, wore a case made of wood, ornamented with sculpture: this was a new and ridiculous fashion, which he had borrowed from a nation of black people who lived at a great distance from Caffraria. In the hot season the Caffres go always naked, and retain nothing but their ornaments: in cold weather they wear krosses made of calves or oxen's hides, which reach down to the ground. They are exactly delineated in the fifth and sixth plates, which represent a young Caffre holding a bundle of assagays, and a woman suckling her child.

A peculiarity, which is probably to be met with nowhere else, and which deserves some attention, is, that the Caffre women put very little value upon dress: as they are, in comparison of other savages, well made, and handsome, they have likewise sense enough to know that ornaments are more intended to veil imperfections than to embellish beauties; but whatever may be in this, one never sees amongst them that shew and profusion of them which are general among the female Hottentots. They do not even wear copper bracelets; but their little aprons, which are still shorter than those of the Gonaquas, are bordered with a few rows of glass beads, and in this all their luxury consists. The skin which the female Hottentots wear on their reins behind, among the Caffre women rises to their arm-pits, and is fastened round the neck, which it covers. Like their husbands, they have krosses of the skins of calves or oxen, but always more smooth: they, however, use neither the one nor the other except in cold or wet weather. These skins are fully as soft and pliable as our finest stuffs; and as

to the manner in which the Caffres dress them, it is nearly the same process as that which the Hottentots follow.

In any weather of the coldest season, males and females go bareheaded. I have indeed at times seen a bunch of feathers fastened in their hair; but this fantastical ornament is not generally used.

The different precautions used by the Caffre women in childbirth, and in their periodical indispositions, are in every respect the same with those which the Gonaqua or Hottentot women use.

They are daily employed in fabricating earthen-ware, which they mould with as much ingenuity as their husbands. Those which I had with me in my camp, having found clay fit for the purpose, did not lose this opportunity of making pipkins, and other vessels which are in use amongst them. At their departure they carried with them a sufficient provision of this earth, with which they loaded their oxen. It is the females also, as I have already mentioned, who weave their baskets: they too make ready the ground for receiving their seed; though it may be more properly said they scratch it up with their wooden pick-axes than plow it.

The huts of the Caffres are larger, and higher roofed than those of the Hottentots, and have a more regular shape likewise; being that of a complete hemisphere. The frames of them are constructed of wooden work, well put together and very solid, because it is intended to last a long time. This they afterwards cover, both within and without, with a kind of mud or plaster made of cows dung and clay mixed up together, and spread over it very smoothly. These huts exhibit to the eye an air of neatness which the habitations of the Hottentots undoubtedly have not; and one would almost believe them to be done over with the finest cement. The only opening which they have is so low and narrow, that people must lie down on their bellies to enter it. This custom at first appeared to me highly ridiculous, and to be carried to a much greater length than among the Hottentots; but as they use these huts only in the night-time, it is easier, on this account, to defend oneself either against animals, or the sudden attacks of an enemy. The floors of them are covered with the same substance as the walls; and in the
centre

centre is formed a circular hearth, surrounded by a border two or three inches in height, to contain the fire, and preserve the hut from any danger which it might occasion. Around the hut, at the distance of five or six inches, they dig a small trench, about a foot and a half in depth, and as much in breadth, for the purpose of receiving the waters; and this precaution secures it from all moisture. In different cantons I visited and surveyed more than seven hundred of these huts; but I never saw one of a square form, as some authors have pretended. Besides, I suppose it is of little importance to the reader to know whether these savages lodge in round or in square habitations; but I must observe, that, by taking notice of every thing, one may, at same time, discover such travellers as have only seen part of what they have described.

The ground of the Caffres, either owing to the soil, situation, or many small rivers which water them, is much more productive than those of the Hottentots, it necessarily follows, that the Caffres, who apply to agriculture, remain fixed to one spot; and this is always the case when nothing interrupts their repose. The same fields which gave them birth, is also the scene of their latest moments, unless they are attacked, I do not say by barbarous persecutors only, who thirst after their blood, but by some of those destructive scourges which spare neither men nor animals, and which spread desolation in a moment throughout immense regions. A neat and solid habitation, constructed near a rivulet, in the middle of a cultivated field which they have inherited from their forefathers, is sufficient to enrich the Caffrarian language with the pleasant appellation of country; which the wandering insensibility of the Hottentots will hinder them from ever being sensible of.

One observation has however struck me, which, though it may seem remarkable, is however certain and universal: notwithstanding the forests and beautiful woods with which Caffraria is covered; notwithstanding those delightful pastures which rise to such a height as to conceal the herds that are scattered here and there in the fields; and notwithstanding those rivers and streams which cross each other in a thousand different directions to render them rich and fertile; their oxen, their cows,

and almost all their animals, are much smaller than those of the Hottentots—a difference which undoubtedly arises from the nature of sap, and a certain flavour predominant in every kind of grass. I have made this observation, not only on the domestic animals of the cantons which I traversed, but also on those which were wild, and I really found them smaller than those I had before seen in the dry and parched countries. I remarked, in my tour among the Nimiquas, who inhabit mere rocks and the most barren parts perhaps of all Africa, that their oxen were the most beautiful I had ever beheld; and that even the elephants and the hippopotami were much more robust than any where else. The little pasture which is to be met with in these miserable places, is likewise exceedingly tender and sweet. This quality in the herbs may easily be distinguished, and I employed a particular method to discover it. After I arrived in any canton, when my cattle returned from pasture, I judged of the harshness of the grass upon which they had fed, by their dispersing themselves all over my camp, and eagerly searching for the bones left by my dogs, in order to ease their teeth. As these bones were of a calcareous nature, by gnawing them they blunted the force of that irritation and acidity which tormented them. We therefore never threw our bones into the fire. When these were wanting, dry wood or stones answered the purpose; and when these could not be found, they even gnawed one another's horns. When the feeding was plenty, this plan was never followed.

Judging from a more observable industry, their knowledge of some of the most necessary arts, a little acquaintance with agriculture, and a very few religious tenets, it is probable that the Caffres are a much more civilized people than those who live farther south. Circumcision, which they generally practise, proves that they either owe their origin to some ancient people, from whom they have degenerated, or that they have only copied it from neighbours, of whom they have at present no remembrance; for when one speaks to them of this ceremony, they say it is neither from religion nor any other mystic cause that they adopt it. They however entertain a very exalted idea of the Supreme Being, and of his power: and they believe

believe in a future state, and that the wicked will be punished, and the good rewarded; but they have no idea of the creation. They imagine that the world existed from eternity, and that it will always remain as it is at present. In other respects they use no religious ceremonies, and they never offer up prayers; so that we may justly say they have no religion at all, if there be no religion without worship. They take upon themselves the care of educating their own children. Though they have no priests, they have magicians, who are much feared and revered by the greater part; but I never had the satisfaction of seeing any of them. Notwithstanding all their credit, I am very doubtful whether they impose as much upon the vulgar as ours. These Caffres suffer themselves to be governed by a general chief or king, whose power, as I have had occasion to observe, is very limited. As he receives no subsidies, he cannot maintain troops, and he is far from having it in his power to be despotic. He is the father of a free people, but he is neither feared nor respected. He is often much poorer than any of his subjects, because, being at liberty to take as many wives as he chooses, and as these women think it an honour to belong to him, the expences occasioned by this regal train, and which he is obliged to take from his private treasury, I mean his fields, his cattle, &c. ruin his property, and reduce it to nothing. His hut is neither higher nor better ornamented than the rest; and he collects his seraglio and his family around him, which consists of twelve or fifteen huts at most. The surrounding fields are those that he commonly cultivates, and it is usual for each person to gather in his own crops, in order to dispose of them in any manner he inclines. The grain which they gather in is the favourite food of the Caffres: they beat and bruise it between two stones; and for this reason, every family, separating from the rest that they may have their articles within reach, one horde, though not very numerous, frequently occupies a league square of ground, which in no case happens among the Hottentots or the Gonaquas.

This separation of the various hordes from each other, makes it necessary that they should have leaders, whom the king appoints. When he has any thing to communicate

cate to them of great importance for the nation, he sends for them, and tells them his orders, or, I ought rather to say, his news. The other chiefs then return to circulate them among those over whom they preside.

The intrepid character of the Caffres, is ever to be inferred from their arms, which are a plain lance and assegai. They despise poisoned arrows, which are so much in use among their neighbours, and hold them as unworthy of their courage. They always wish to meet their enemy face to face, and they never can throw their assegais until they are in the open fields. The Hottentot, on the contrary, concealed under a rock or behind a bush, deals out destruction without being exposed to danger. The one is a perfidious tiger, which rushes treacherously on his prey; and the other is a generous lion, which having given warning of his approach, makes his attack boldly, and perishes if he does not get the better of his antagonist. The inequality of his arms is not capable of making him hesitate a moment, for his courage and spirit supply every deficiency. In the time of war, indeed, he carries a buckler of about three feet in height, made of the thickest part of a buffalo's hide, which is sufficient to defend him from arrows, and even assegais, but not from a ball. The Caffre manages also, with much address, a weapon no less terrible than the assegai, when he falls in with his enemy. This weapon is a club, two feet and a half in length, made of one piece of wood, or of a root, three inches in diameter where thickest, and decreasing in size towards one of its extremities. Sometimes he will throw it to the distance of fifteen or twenty paces, and he generally hits the proposed mark. I have seen one of them kill a partridge in this way the moment it sprang up from the earth.

The chief power is hereditary in the family of the king, and the prince is always succeeded by his eldest son; but in default of male heirs, the nearest nephews, and not his brothers, are the successors. In cases where the sovereign leaves neither nephews nor children, a king is then chosen from among the chiefs of the different hordes. On such occasions a party spirit sometimes prevails, which occasions factions and intrigues which generally terminate in bloodshed.

Polygamy

Polygamy is frequent among the Caffres, and their marriages are of a still simpler kind than even the Hottentots. The parents of the bridegroom are always contented with the choice he has made, but those of the bride inspect into matters a little more narrowly. They, however, seldom start many difficulties; they drink, dance, and make merry for whole weeks, according to the riches of the two families: but these festivals never take place except one marries for the first time; in other cases every thing is transacted in private. The Caffres are no better acquainted with music, and have no other instruments than the Hottentots, except that I saw amongst them a wretched flute scarcely worth being mentioned. They have the English step in their dances, but they are nearly the same in every thing else.

When the father of a family dies, the male children and the mother share the succession between them. The girls receive no part of it, and they remain with their mother until they can procure a husband. If they marry during the life of the parents, they receive nothing else as a dowry but a few cattle, according to the riches of either party.

They do not commonly inter their dead; but are carried from the Kraal by the family, and deposited in a ditch which is open and common to the whole horde. Savage animals often go thither to feed at their leisure, and this preserves the air pure, which would otherwise soon become corrupted, by the multitude of carcases that are heaped together. Funeral honours are due only to kings and the chiefs of each horde. They cover the bodies with a heap of stones, piled up into the shape of a dome; and this explains the cause of the number of little hillocks ranged in a line in the neighbourhood of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, which the Caffres had possession of formerly.

I am a stranger to the dispositions of the Caffres in love matters, and I cannot say whether they are given to jealousy or not. I imagine however that they are so only with their own countrymen; for they readily give up their women to the first white man who wishes to enjoy them, provided they receive a small retribution. Hans repeatedly gave me to understand, that all those whom I admitted into my camp were at my service, and that

that I had nothing to do but to make a choice: indeed there were no kind of allurements which they did not throw out before their husbands to lead me into their snares; and the others were probably displeased with the cool manner in which their addresses were viewed by me.

I do not intend to enlarge farther on these matters, as I imagine I have said what may be sufficient to shew how far these people differ from their neighbours, when there is no other communication between them but that occasioned by bloody wars and unvaried dislike.

The happy day which was the eighth, in which we were to draw near to the Cape, at length arrived, upon which I made a general review of my carriages, equipage, and oxen, &c. I had arranged my new collections, and surveyed those which I procured before; the balls and shot necessary for our hunting excursions were cast; my oxen, which for a long time had enjoyed rest, and abundance of excellent pasture, were full and in good condition: in short, I was prepared to set out; but I allowed other two days to bid adieu to our worthy neighbours, and to entertain ourselves among them.

So soon as the news of my determination was circulated, I soon observed all the horde arriving, both men and women, in numbers. Haabas was at their head, while all who could walk followed him, and ran up to bid us farewell before we departed. I was extremely happy that they had come to spend these two days with us. The good Haabas introduced to me four or five Gonaquas of another horde, who having heard mention made of me, had been deputed to invite me to visit their canton. This favour was requested too late; but I softened the refusal of it by engaging to keep in mind their invitation the next time that I should take a journey into those regions.

For these two days all of us yielded to every extravagance of joy and amusement, my brandy was not forgot, nor the hydromel which Haabas had prepared on purpose and brought along with him; but the beautiful Narina and her sister, who were of the party, took no share in these orgies. Sadness had above all disfigured the features of Narina, whom I comforted as well as I could by giving her a few presents. I gave her some also for
her

her sister, her mother, and her friends ; in a word, I disposed upon this occasion of the greater part of my toys : but dress at this time was not what principally engaged her attention. To Haabas and his people I gave every thing I could spare without hurting me, and without depriving myself of those resources which were necessary for my return. Tobacco in a particular manner was distributed with great prodigality among these worthy savages, and I kept only as much of it as might be enough to satisfy my own people till we should come to the Cape.

I then took the venerable Haabas apart, and entreated him in the most affectionate manner, nay even with emotion, to adopt the advice which I had given him as to his own preservation, and that of his horde. I endeavoured to persuade him that the apparent ease of the planters, always collected in the same place, seemed to forbode some new scheme, and of course new acts of treachery ; and that as his kraal lay directly between the planters and the Caffres, he might sooner or later fall a victim either to the one or the other party.

He said he would remove to a more suitable distance immediately upon my departure ; giving as a reason for his not forming this resolution sooner, that he wished to have the pleasure of seeing me again on my return from Caffraria : but he added, with that affection and love of which he had given me so many proofs, that if the times became fortunate, that is to say, if peace should be restored, he was resolved to settle in my camp, for the sake of his benefactor, and as he could not pitch upon a more pleasant place.

I set out on the 4th of December : but it would be in vain for me to attempt describing the consternation of the Gonaquas ; one might have said that I was leaving them to the wild beasts, and that in losing me they lost every thing valuable. With still more difficulty could I describe my own feelings. I had now given the signal, and my people, carriages, and cattle, were already on their road : I therefore slowly followed this body ; leading my horse by the bridle ; and as I neither looked back to those behind me, nor uttered a single word, I let my tears relieve the sad weight upon my heart.

Worthy

Worthy and real friends, I shall see you no more!—Whatever may be the reason for those tender sentiments which you have engaged to entertain towards me—be ye happy!—The cause of them is not more pure in Europe than among you—be ye happy! No power can destroy the recollection of them. Trusting in my adieus, my regret, and my tears, you have perhaps long expected me in your calamities: your deceived simplicity has perhaps brought you back more than once to those happy spots which were the scenes of our meetings and of our festivals; you have in vain sought for me; in vain have you called me to assist you: I could neither comfort nor defend you, immense tracts of country separate us for ever. But think no more of me. May no foolish hope disturb the tranquillity of your moments; such an idea would embitter all my days. I have again yielded to the fetters of society; I shall die like so many others, oppressed by an enormous load; but I can at least say, with my last breath, “my very name is already forgot among my friends, while my footsteps are still visible among the Gonaquas.”

Agreeable to the information I had got, I supposed that we should see the snow-mountains upon the east side; and that by leaving Bruyntjes-Hoogte on the left, and passing that chain of mountains which bear the same name, though they extend to a considerable distance, we must undoubtedly reach the former, at the distance of forty or fifty leagues, or thereabouts, according to the road by which the various turnings might oblige me to carry my baggage and carriages.

So various were the accounts I had heard of these hills, that I was exceedingly anxious to see them, and pass them without being hurried, but I could not reach them so soon as I imagined. Besides, being informed that the height and coldness of their tops rendered them uninhabitable for several months of the year, this new climate seemed to promise me new productions, and that of various kinds, worthy of my attention.

Although the heat was excessive we proceeded full six leagues; and about one in the afternoon we halted, at the ruins of a kraal which had been terribly ravaged. The miserable inhabitants had perhaps been surpris'd and slain

lain on the spot, as the ground was overspread with human bones and pieces of carcases; a disgusting spectacle which we hastened to be away from.

We set out at four that evening, and having proceeded four hours, we came to a deserted dwelling, from which there had been nothing carried away but the furniture. I meant to spend the night here; but we had only put ourselves in order, when I felt a most extraordinary itching all over my body; upon which I uncovered my breast, and saw it quite black with numerous swarms of fleas. The very Hottentots were not altogether free from the attacks of these importunate vermin; and for this reason we immediately quitted the infectious places, which my people called the *camp of fleas*, and went to establish ourselves at a little distance, upon the banks of a pure and delightful stream, into which I plunged without taking time to strip. As my body was completely speckled, to Klaas recommended me, when I came out of the bath, to suffer myself to be rubbed in the manner of the savages. I was therefore greased and *boghoused* for the first time in my life, and I must acknowledge, that I found myself much easier. Though we only halted a quarter of an hour in this unfortunate spot, my dogs and carriages were covered with these flies. The balsamic operation to which I had just submitted was the only plan to secure me from them, until time, or a shower of rain, might get us entirely quit of them. By reason of this process, which is customary with the Hottentots, they had not been attacked by them in the manner I was.

This new place which we took possession of, and where we spent the night, was not without its beauties. On the north side we were enclosed by vast forests of the same kinds of trees as those before mentioned; and the plain was filled with the mimosa, which the planters call *dooren-boom*: I had the satisfaction to see it in full blossom. This was a fortunate circumstance to me; and I did not fail to take advantage of it; for, as I have already mentioned, the flowers of this tree attract a vast number of uncommon insects, which are rarely found but at this season; and these insects, in their turn, attract thither large flocks of birds of every sort, to which they serve as food. I pitched, therefore, in this plain, where I entertained

myself in altering my spot for encampment. I had cause to suppose that all the borders of the forest had been at one time inhabited by Caffres; for we could not stir a step without noticing the remains of old huts, more or less destroyed by the ravages of time. I here found, without any difficulty, two sorts of antelope, the gnou and the spring-buck. The silence of the night never struck me as more majestic than here. The roaring of the lion resounded around us at certain times, but the conversations of these ferocious animals, could not terrify us, nor interrupt our rest, having been accustomed to them, and to live among them for more than twelve months. We did not, however, neglect our customary precautions. My collection was increasing every day; and I enriched it here with a noble bird entirely unknown to ornithologists: the Hottentots named it *uyt-lager*, or the mock-bird. As soon as it saw any of us, or our animals, more of the same species instantly came in view by scores; and setting upon the branches nearest to us, raising themselves straight on their feet, and balancing their bodies from the one side to the other, they stunned us by repeating in a very quick manner these syllables, *gra, ga, ga, ga*. These poor creatures seemed hurrying to their own destruction; for we killed as many of them as we inclined. This bird is nearly of the same size with the black-bird; its plumage, which is of a golden green, has a tinge of purple; the long tail is shaped like the head of a lance, and, like the feathers of the wings, it is delightfully spotted with white: the bill, which is hooked and long, is remarkable as well as the feet, by being of a most beautiful red colour. It climbs along the branches of trees, to catch insects on which it feeds; and when they hide themselves below the bark, it detaches them with its beak very nicely.

This bird is by no means a wood-pecker, although it appears to have a considerable affinity to it. Very particular characteristics, as will be afterwards shewn, plainly distinguish it from them.

Observing one evening that they approached us in flocks, without the least precaution, or being any way alarmed by our presence, to rest in different holes in the trunk of a large tree, near which we were encamped, I desired that several of these holes might be closed; and the

the following morning, when I opened them with great care, I had the satisfaction to seize these birds by their bills, as they made their appearance in order to escape. This plan is certainly very simple and easy; and barbets and wood-peckers of every kind may be caught in the same way; but, as the latter secrete themselves better than the former, they are not so easily discovered. An observation which I imagine to be very just, is, that such birds as have two toes before and two behind, retire to hollow trees in the night-time; but this, however, does not hinder other species, such as the titmouse, the nut-hatch*, &c. of the same instinct.

It would not be prudent to thrust one's hand into these holes without being acquainted with the contents; for they are frequently occupied by small quadrupeds of the size of a rat; and serpents also sometimes get into them, in order to devour the birds or the eggs: and though these reptiles, for the most part, are not noxious, they never fail to occasion great terror, which people cannot always suppress. That species called *kooper-kapel*, of which I have already spoken, glide up trees very easily, and may also take shelter in some of these holes: people, then, would be in hazard of still more than fear, and pay a very high price for their rash curiosity.

We prosecuted our journey on the 16th. I had encamped five different times in this country, which we were now about to leave. Having marched three hours, I found we were on the banks of the Klein-Vis river; so that I could not proceed farther that day: and we occupied a great deal of time in attempting to find a part of the river fordable for the carriages. They had been in considerable hazard of upsetting formerly in this very spot.

Having passed the river the next day without any harm, I found another forsaken dwelling; but I had not the curiosity to advance to it. Some leagues farther we found abundance of mimosas, and all as completely in blossom as those I had left the evening before. I yielded the more readily to the temptation which induced me to stop on the borders of these forests, as I observed a variety of

O 2

birds.

* In French *Torchepot*. *Sitta Europæa*, Linn. T.

birds which I had no where seen, and, for the second time, that kind of perroquet of which I have before spoken. Wandering to a little distance, I found myself in a small meadow, amidst a wood of very bushy trees. This peaceful desert seemed to be favourable for my operations, and very convenient for my carriages; but to convey them through bushes and branches which crossed each other in a thousand different directions, appeared to be a work of great difficulty. We had, however, overcome obstacles even more insurmountable; and this, like all the rest, gave way to our exertions. On the 19th, after much labour and fatigue, I accomplished my design; but I had the misfortune to lose one of my best oxen, which was driven with so much violence against one of the mimosas that its prickles penetrated the animal's breast, and broke in the flesh. We extracted in the best manner we could all those which appeared, or which we could lay hold of, with a pair of pincers; but, as our art extended no farther, those which had sunk deeper, and which we could neither lay hold of nor observe, produced so great an inflammation, that, in the course of twenty-four hours, all the advice of my chief physicians terminated in resolving to kill the patient, a resolution which they immediately put in force.

Touracos were found in swarms in these woods, which were more familiar, and seemed to be much larger than those of the wood of Auteniqua. I noticed here likewise a new species of the calao; and, among other birds which had never before seen, I distinguished a blackbird with an orange-coloured belly; which, besides the pleasure occasioned by this discovery, gave me also an opportunity to observe the simplicity of my Hottentots. When Pit brought this bird to me, which was a female one, I desired him to return that moment to the place where he had killed it, not doubting that he would find the male; but he begged me to dispense with his services upon this occasion, as he durst not venture to fire at it. I however continued to insist upon his obeying; but what was my astonishment when I saw him with an affected air, and in a tone almost lamentable, declare that some misfortune would undoubtedly ensue; that he had scarcely killed the female, when the male began to pursue him with

with great fury, continually crying out *Pit me-wrou, Pit-me-wrou!* It must be observed that these two words exactly represent the animal's cry; and I was more convinced of this afterwards, by killing one of these blackbirds, than by the vain terrors of Pit. The syllables it seems to pronounce are three Dutch words, which signify *Pit* or *Peter my wife*; and Pit imagined that the bird, calling him by his name, requested him to return his mate. I found it almost impossible to calm the disturbed imagination of this man, who persisted in refusing to fire on these birds; and had any unlucky accident happened to him during our marches or hunting excursions, whatever might have been the cause of it, his companions would no doubt have ascribed it to his killing the first of these blackbirds. This idea, founded upon a fact which I had myself an opportunity to be satisfied about, might, in the wilds of Africa, have answered as a fundamental miracle of a new religious sect.

Throughout this forest I met with a species of apes with black faces; but I could never get hold of any of them. Skipping from one tree to another, as if setting me at defiance, they in turns appeared and disappeared in an instant; whilst I fatigued myself to no purpose in pursuing them. One morning, however, after ranging for some time in the neighbourhood of my camp, I observed about thirty of them seated on the branches of a tree, and exposing their white bellies to the first rays of the sun. As the tree which they had chosen was so much separated from the rest, that their shadow did not incommode them, I made a circuit through the bushes, and having approached as near to them as I could without being discovered, I ran up to the tree before they had time to descend. I was certain that none of them had escaped; but, notwithstanding this, I could not perceive one of them, though I cast my eyes round on every side, and walked backwards and forwards, examining the tree with the utmost attention. I resolved therefore to sit down at some distance from the root of it, and to watch until I could observe some motion; and after a considerable space of time I was amply repaid for my patience. I at length saw a head stretched out, apparently with a view of discovering what was become of me; upon which

taking aim, I discharged my piece, and the animal instantly fell. I expected that the noise of the report would have frightened the rest of the troop; but this was not the case; and though I kept my post for half an hour longer, not one of them stirred or appeared. Tired of this fatiguing employment, I fired several times into the tree at random, and had the pleasure of seeing two more fall; while a third, which was only wounded, suspended itself by its tail from a small branch: another discharge brought this one down also; and, being satisfied with my spoil, I collected my four apes, and set out to return to my camp. When I had got to a certain distance from the tree, I saw the whole troop, which, imagining that I was now too far from them to do any execution, descend with precipitation, and hasten towards the thickest part of the woods, sending forth loud cries. By some stragglers, which with difficulty followed the rest, halting either on one of the hind or fore feet, I concluded that several of them had been wounded by my shot; but in this precipitate flight I did not observe, as some travellers have said, that those unhurt assisted the lame ones, by taking them up on their shoulders, in order that their common retreat might not be retarded: and I cannot help thinking that, in this respect, when attacked, they resemble the Hottentots, whose attention is too much employed about their own security to be occupied about that of any one else.

Upon my return to the camp, I proceeded to examine my seizure. This kind of ape is middle sized; the hair, which is pretty long, has generally a greenish tint; its belly, as I have already remarked, is white, and its face is altogether black. Its rump is callous; and this part, which is entirely destitute of hair, as well as the organs of generation in the male, is of a fine blue colour. At the time when I was examining these animals, Kees entered my tent, and I imagined that he was about to give vent to loud cries, when he perceived them, though they were of a different species from him; but it appeared that he was not so much afraid of them when dead as when alive: he considered them one after the other, and turned them over several times in all directions, to examine them in the same manner as he had seen me. He

was

was not, I believe, the *first monkey* who wished to set up for a naturalist; but he was strongly impelled by a secret motive much less generous than that of acquiring knowledge. By feeling the cheeks of the deceased, he had discovered some treasures; for I soon saw him venture to open their mouths, take from their pouches* the almonds they had taken off the tree called *geel-hout*, and put them in his own pouch.

My situation here became very important, and produced me great store; besides, it was very pleasant to my people, and supplied plenty of provisions for my cattle. I remained in it, therefore, till the 28th, and left it with much regret. It was one of those which made me understand with what ease I could forget the existence of any other climates, manners, or amusements.

We proceeded the next morning, and having travelled three hours, we fell in with a few savage Hottentots, who were driving some sheep before them, and going to join their respective hordes, from which they had separated; but for what end I could not learn. As I run short of provisions, I purchased a couple of these animals from them, for which I paid them liberally, and we continued our journey together for above an hour; after which, their destination being different from ours, they left us to revisit their kraals that were a few leagues distant. Three hours after, we were stopped by the river Klein-Vis, which, from the time that we crossed it, now appeared to us for the third time. The wheels of one of my carriages began here to give way; the spokes turned so loose in the naves, that the smallest jolt made us tremble; any more delay would only have increased the misfortune, and on this account I determined to continue in my encampment here a few days to repair it. It was here, in two days after, by the new style of my calendar, that we spent new year's day 782.

The Hottentots, who have not the least idea of the solar year, are consequently strangers to the etiquette of the first day it commences; no compliments therefore
were

* It has been observed by Naturalists, that between the cheeks and the under jaw-bones of apes, they have bags or pouches, which answer for store-houses, in which they deposit from time to time such fruits as for want of leisure, or inclination they keep there, till hunger stimulate.

were paid on our part, and consequently there were no falsehoods told, and no hypocritical protestations made. I only gave myself, as a new-year's gift, a new hat, which had never been cocked, and I made my people shoot for my old one. Klaas having been so fortunate as to break the bottle to pieces, it would be impossible for me to describe his joy when he found that he had gained the prize, and increased his wardrobe by so valuable an article, and a piece of dress vastly more splendid than the old breeches which I presented him upon my solemn entrance among the Gonaquas.

The following morning, as we were busily engaged about our waggon and wheels, an universal joy seemed to circulate over every face: and when I asked my people the cause of this sudden emotion, they came up to me, and pointed to a distant cloud, which seemed to be advancing towards us. In this phenomenon I found nothing that could occasion so much rejoicing; and I did not distinguish, till this pretended cloud had got nearer us, that it was composed of millions of locusts. I had often heard mention made of these insects, which every year collect themselves into innumerable swarms, and quit the places that gave birth to them, in order to establish themselves somewhere else; but this was the first time I ever saw them. They were indeed so numerous, that they darkened the air; they did not, however, rise very high above our heads, and they formed a column which might be about three thousand feet in length, and, reckoning by my watch, three hours elapsed before they had passed us. This swarm stuck so close, that a number of them, stifled or hurt by being thrown upon the others, fell like hail showers, while Kees, who gathered them, regaled himself on them with great satisfaction.

They were also an excellent feast to the Hottentot people, who extolled this manna so much that I yielded to the temptation, and wished to partake with them; but if it is true, as we are assured, that in Greece, and particularly at Athens, the public markets were always supplied with this food, and that it was much sought after by the epicures of the time, I freely acknowledge, that I should have cut a very ridiculous figure among these

Acridophagi,

Acridophagi, if Heaven, together with the taste of the Greeks, had conferred upon me a different constitution.

Upon the 3d day of January we set out, and, leaving behind us that chain of hills, called Bruyntjes-Hoogte, we perceived to the north those of Snew Berg, for which we had been so long wishing. Though the hottest season was now arrived, we still observed snow in the fissures and ravines nearest the summits of these awful mountains. Whilst I was amusing myself in looking at them with my spy-glass, my Hottentots informed me that they saw a white man. This discovery affected me in a very sensible manner, for I had not seen any of that colour for several months. I found that this person had undertaken a very long journey, merely with a view to procure salt, at a lake situated near the river Swart-Kops; and having joined him, we conversed together for some time; but he could not refrain from shedding tears when he related to me that in the commencement of the war against Caffra-ria, in which he refused to assist the rest of the planters, he had been attacked, with his wife, an only son, and his Hottentots, by the Caffres, with whom he had always before kept up a friendly intercourse; that he and his family had quickly hid themselves in the bushes; but that, when day arrived, the whole troop united, and he found his son pierced through by a thousand assegays. The melancholy tale of this unfortunate father filled me with great grief; and though I did not attempt to allay his, the most profound silence expressed, better than vain reasoning, what consolation he could expect from a feeling heart. He however acknowledged, that the hatred of the Caffres was invincible, but that it was very unfortunate for those that were innocent that the effects of their hatred did not at all times light on those who merited it only.

For a little entertainment, I desired him to spend this night with me, and I regaled him in the best way I was able. I feasted him with my best tea, and gave him some fine tobacco. The thread of our conversation having conducted us, I know not how, to the subject of horses, he told me that one of his friends, who lived near the Swart Kops, had shewn him one which he had found when out on a hunting excursion, and that, not being a-
ble

ble to discover to whom he belonged, he had kept him. This circumstance reminded me of the one I had left on the banks of the river Krom, at the end of the Ange-Kloof, seven or eight months before; and, after the account which I gave, he was so firmly persuaded that this was my horse, that he immediately offered to let me pick out two of his best oxen, if I would consign my right over to him, and give him a letter to his friend that he might send for him. My horse undoubtedly was worth much more than he offered; but, considering on the one hand the difficulties and the delay that would be occasioned by undertaking so long a journey, and on the other the service that I might immediately receive from the two oxen which he offered me, and being anxious likewise to give him some token of my regard and friendship, I made no hesitation in accepting his proposal, and I gave him a line to demand my horse which was there.

We still prosecuted our journey towards the Snaw-Berg, which we kept always in sight, and at the foot of which I expected to arrive the day following; but about eleven the excessive heat obliged us to halt on the banks of the Bly river, where we passed the night. This torrent was of little service to us, as the drought had dried it almost entirely up, so that we had nothing else to quench the thirst which tormented us but some bad tasted stagnant water, that we found in some of the deepest parts of its bed. At the break of day we hastened to quit this disagreeable place, and, after a march of three hours and a half, we fell in with another river, named Birds river, where I remarked, among other singularities, that the more we approached the snow mountains the more intense the heat became. The piles of rocks which composed their lofty peaks, heated no doubt by the scorching sun, reflected his rays and concentrated them in the adjoining valleys. As all the caravan was much distressed by it, we could not make farther progress.

During the short time employed in passing from the one river to the other, we fell in with only one flock of spring-boc antelopes; but this flock filled all the plain. It was an emigration of which we saw neither the beginning nor the end. This was precisely the season when these animals quit the dry rocky regions of the extremity

of
or
at
to
ry
mu
of
and
qui
us,
wou
men
lope
Alm
cau
V
we
mou
with
The
havi
he d
himf
vanc
to hi
nute
some
it up
my p
made
of my
attenc
Th
promi
as on
7th, v
numb
my pe
them,
perati
them t
tained

of Africa to repair towards the north, either to Caffraria, or some other woody country abounding with water. To attempt to number them, or to say that they amounted to twenty, thirty, or even fifty thousand, I should be very far from the truth; to believe what I here assert one must have seen their passage. We marched in the midst of them, yet they seemed not to be in the least deranged; and they were so tame that I killed three of them without quitting my carriage: it would have been very easy for us, had there been occasion for it, to procure as many as would have supplied provisions for a long time to innumerable armies. In a word, the retreat of these antelopes marked out, with greater certainty than the *Liege Almanack*, that approaching heat which there was every cause to look for.

We set out again on the morning of the 9th, and as we went up the birds river, which rises in the snow mountains, an accident, that might have been attended with very serious consequences, stopped us for some time. The clothes of the person who drove one of my carriages having caught hold of some prickles of the mimosa, which he did not observe, while he was endeavouring to place himself in his seat he fell down, and as the waggon advanced the wheel went over his leg. I instantly ran up to him, and I was exceedingly happy to find, after a minute examination, that there was no fracture. I applied fomentations to the wound myself, afterwards wrapped it up with several bandages soaked in brandy, and, lest my patient should regret the use to which I applied it, I made him swallow a large bumper of it. He rode in one of my carriages for several days; and this accident was attended with no other effects.

The snow mountains seemed to me like the land of promise, for I found it extremely difficult to reach them, as one obstacle constantly succeeded another. On the 7th, when I was about to depart, perceiving, when I numbered my cattle, that three of them were wanting, my people dispersed themselves on every side in quest of them, and were fortunate enough to succeed; but this operation required so much time, that we could not yoke them till seven in the evening. The days had now attained to their greatest length, but the coolness of the nights

nights was extremely agreeable; and, as I conjectured that we were no more than four or five leagues from Platte river, I intended, when we arrived there, not to proceed any farther.

We had scarce travelled two or three leagues, when one of my Hottentots in the rear-guard came galloping towards me full speed, followed by all the relays, which arrived in the greatest confusion. The terror being communicated to the twelve oxen of my Pampoen-kraal wagon, which at that time having no Hottentots to keep them back and manage the two first, as is commonly the case, took fright and started on one side, by which accident the pole was broken, and dragging the carriage after them, they rushed into the thickest part of the bushes. Our confusion now became every moment more universal, and by the bellowing of the oxen there appeared to be no doubt that we were pursued by lions. We therefore ran to our arms; and whilst some attempted to stop the oxen of the other two carriages, which had suffered themselves to be hurried away like those of the third, and while others were busied in gathering and collecting every thing they could lay their hands on in order to kindle fires, I set out, accompanied by my most expert hurtsmen, and went back the same way we had come, to oppose these cruel animals, and give the others time to make every necessary preparation. The night was not very dark; we were upon a sandy plain, which enabled us to perceive objects at a certain distance; and when I saw my dogs approach us, and keep close to us in a body, I was fully persuaded that there were lions near us. Suddenly observing two of these animals, which appeared to be waiting for us on a small eminence, we discharged all our musquets together; but this produced no other effect than to make them disappear. We however still advanced in hopes of at least killing one of them, and, by way of precaution, we continued to discharge our fuses, but we saw nothing more of them. As it was of no moment to persist in pursuing them farther, for they had by this time got to a considerable distance, and as our fires were well kindled, we approached them, while our scattered oxen did the same. They arrived at the spot one after the other, and in a little time we had re-

covered

covered them all, except those belonging to the Pampon-kraal waggon, which we heard bellowing at a certain distance. Though they were not far from us, none of my people shewed any inclination to go to their relief; but having at length prevailed upon a few of them to follow me, each of us took a flaming torch in the one hand, and a musquet in the other, and, protected by my dogs which preceded us, we went in search of them, and soon reached the place where they were. When we arrived, I found that the piece of the pole which the oxen had carried with them being caught between two trees had stopped them: they were all in a cluster, and so embarrassed in the traces, that there were no other means of extricating them but by cutting them to pieces. Three of the oxen were missing; they had broken their yokes, and we supposed that they were devoured; but when we returned to our fires, I learned that they had just made their appearance.

Were these animals taught by an instinct merely mechanical, that near fires they had nothing to fear from their enemies? Had custom inspired them with this reflection, that for more than the space of a year, spent in travelling along with me, voracious animals, which at first caused so much uneasiness to them, dared neither to attack them nor come near them? Or did they conceive so high a notion of man, as to see in him a powerful protector, and an irresistible defender? I shall not attempt to explain this subject; but I know that Nature, which gives to all animals whatever, a sufficient share of intelligence to provide for their own safety, seemed here to have doubled it; and upon this point I have oftener than once had occasion to make remarks, which have always filled me with amazement and admiration. The morals to be drawn from natural history extend farther than may be imagined. The eye of metaphysics penetrates daily farther and farther; and blind curiosity, which alone formed collections formerly, gives place at present to nobler and more valuable motives. The attention of the philosopher is not now drawn to objects too small; the genius of discovery knows to give importance to every thing; and even insects, considered twenty years ago as

minute and mean objects, occupy a conspicuous place in the scale of beings*.

At day-break I returned to the place where I had fired the preceding evening, and I observed the traces of a lion and those of a lioness, which, though equally strong, are always less. Having followed these traces for some time, they led me, by a small winding, near to my people, which proved to me that these animals had advanced close to us. We thought it very lucky that we had kept watch till the appearance of day; and this circumstance was an useful hint to me never to travel during the night in countries with which I was so little acquainted, and which, as I learned afterwards, are the most dangerous to be passed of all Africa.

I had under my carriages some spare poles cut down in the forests of Auteniqua: but as there was no water in the place where we halted, and as we had no time to lose in procuring any, I ordered the traces to get a temporary repair: we spliced therefore the broken pole, in the best manner we could, with two pieces of wood, and pursued our journey; but how greatly were we disappointed when we came to the Platte river to find it dried up! We went up its banks for three quarters of an hour, always tormented with thirst, which still increased, and out of breath; but at length we had the good fortune to arrive at some bogs, containing a little muddy water which the sun had not yet exhaled.

Here we no longer beheld the beautiful country of Caffraria; and we had entirely lost sight of those rich pastures, and those majestic forests, over which our eyes had wandered with so much delight. Rocks piled on each other and parched sands every day succeeded those beautiful views, under forms always more hideous. We found ourselves every where hemmed in by mountains, the sides of which were inclined in a most fantastical manner, while their peaked tops, suspended over our heads, filled the mind with that profound dread, which is the result of discouragement, and which awakens the most
dismal

* A complete treatise of Ontology will soon appear, worthy of the learned man who first laid the foundations of that excellent work, and of the respectable connoisseur who protects and supports by his fortune so noble an undertaking.

dismal remembrance. Those of Snaw-Berg, at the foot of which we now were, rose very far above the rest; and winter, seated on their summits, seemed to dispute with the sun the sovereignty of these dismal regions.

As it was my intention to climb and traverse a part of this celebrated cordillera, though I knew that the Boshmen had, like the lions, established their haunts in it, and as I was desirous of securing myself from any surprise by either, I pitched my camp in an open spot, and fortified it in the best manner I could.

Having seen the traces of a rhinoceros, my ancient ardour for hunting was again revived, and I promised a handsome reward to the first of my people who should procure me one of these prodigious animals; but neither of us were so fortunate, for we saw no farther appearance of them. I however unexpectedly fell in with a small flock of eight elks, none of which species I had ever killed, and pursuing them briskly, I shot one dead on the spot. Doctor Sparrman has given a very accurate description of this animal, which the savages call *kana*. It is entirely different from the elk described by Buffon, and is only the largest species of the Cape antelopes.

When I returned to my camp, I found that the whole of my hunters, who had dispersed themselves every where throughout the neighbourhood with a view of gaining the prize, were arrived very much discontented and fatigued. One of them having informed me that he had met with a horde of savage Hottentots, whose kraal was situated just at the foot of the mountains, I resolved to pay them a visit; but I carried with me only three of my best marksmen and the person who had given me this intelligence. Next morning, at break of day, we had scarcely advanced half way when we met five of these people, who of their own accord were coming towards my camp to see me. They however turned back, and conducted me to their habitation, where their children, as soon as they espied me, ran different ways to conceal themselves, sending forth horrible cries. This general consternation appeared to me very unnatural, and disconcerted all my ideas; for, when I first entered the horde of Haabas and that of several others, the women and the children had indeed retired, but by their behaviour they shewed nei-

ther fear nor apprehension. Being very desirous to discover the cause of this terror, I was informed that these people had been established only a short while in the place where I saw them; that in Camdebo, their own country, they had experienced a thousand persecutions from the planters; that, animated with the most inveterate and sanguinary hatred against the whites, they attempted to beget in their children the same dislike to them, that it might increase as they grew up; and that they were not unhappy to have heard them rehearse, at this meeting, their bloody lesson.

The men saw me approach with a smile, and seemed by no means surprised to see me; as they had been told the evening before that I proposed to visit them. Their horde amounted only to about an hundred, or an hundred and twenty people; and their flocks, which I met in going towards them, and which consisted of an hundred horned cattle, and perhaps twice that number of sheep, plainly shewed that they were far from being wealthy: but I was more fully convinced that this was the case when I saw these poor wretches employed in drying locusts upon hard mats, and cutting of their legs and their wings. As their collection of this provision was in the highest state of fermentation, I was obliged to take the windward side of them, for the purpose of escaping the infectious exhalations which issued only from them occasionally.

Six months before these miserable creatures had taken refuge here, to shun the cruelties committed by the planters; but, ignorant of it, they had exposed themselves to atrocities of another kind. Besides the dangerous Boshmen, who might every moment discover them, they had to defend themselves also against ferocious animals, and particularly wild dogs, which occasioned great ravages among their flocks. Having given them some advice respecting their safety, and made them a few presents, I offered to purchase some sheep from them, which they promised to bring next morning. As I was preparing to take leave of them, I was obliged to enter one of their huts, to shelter myself from a dreadful storm which suddenly came upon us, and which continued full three hours, during which I was almost inundated. All the
kraal

kraal was in danger of being entirely swept away ; many of the huts were violently shaken ; the torrents hurried before them sand and earth, which they washed down in their course, and trees torn up by the roots ; but as the place which I occupied was better secured, I beheld with pleasure, though up to the knees in water, the cascades and cataracts that fell with a horrid noise from the summits of the mountains, and which, dashing against each other in their fall, reached the plains in a thousand streams, and covered them with vapour and foam. The banks of Platte river, which was only a few paces from me, having in a moment disappeared, I gave the first body of water time to subside ; but being under great uneasiness concerning my camp, I took advantage of the earliest interval which the rain gave us, and set out to return. Whilst I was confined in this hut, I suffered much from a bag of locusts, which, though already dry, emitted a most corrupted and horrid flavour. The rain fell with unremitted fury all the night, and the day following the inundation increased so much, that they could not come to my camp as they had engaged to do.

We had now very little fear of running short of water ; but we made no use of that of the river, because it was both brackish and muddy : we preferred having recourse to the ponds, which remaining quiet, the dirt and sand had subsided by degrees.

The day following the weather was remarkably calm, when about twenty men and some women brought four sheep to me, and an old cow which was only fit for the knife. These people did not seem to be remarkably fond of my glass beads : their women, indeed, were loaded with them. They shewed much more avidity for tobacco ; and as I could procure a supply of this part of my provision with the greatest ease when I entered the colonies, I was not sparing of it. My generosity at this time gained them, and they brought me other eleven sheep, for which I likewise paid them very liberally.

As I knew that I was going to travel through a very dry and barren country, I kept these various articles, as a resource in case of need.

Having one day a great number of these strangers along with me, one of my herdsmen came to tell me, that

TRAVELS IN AFRICA.

several of the Boshmen, coming down from the mountains, had approached him and his companions, but that they had kept them in awe by a few discharges of their musquets. Upon this intelligence, Klaas and I got on horseback, and, followed by four other chasseurs, set out to pursue them. We indeed soon discovered thirteen of these plunderers; but the rapidity of our course, and our determined and resolute appearance, soon put them to flight. We however galloped towards them full speed, and made some of our balls whiz around their ears; but we could not get near enough to take proper aim at them. I considered it as sufficient for me, and it tended not a little to my safety, that we had struck them with some terror. We saw them all enter the mountains by different paths, and they soon disappeared entirely. I greatly admired the agility with which they climbed the steepest rocks with the nimbleness of monkeys; but I was not disposed to follow them any farther; for it would have been very rash to attempt attacking them in their strong holds, and their recesses to which it was impossible to penetrate.

They would not by any means have missed us. They were quite naked; and I imagined, by the marks of their feet, that they used sandals. This slight alarm was of the greatest utility: it served to render us more suspicious; and on this account I doubled our guards, and Swanepoel and I went the rounds alternately; while my faithful Klaas, at the head of a small detachment, visited the valley and its environs. From time to time they fired their fuses, which signals my herdsmen were forced to answer; and thus I was satisfied that they had not been asleep, but faithfully executed their duty.

This step, which I attended to for the preservation of good order, and in order to avoid having any thing to reproach myself with in our present situation, was of very little service in other respects. A Hottentot dreads a Boshman much more than a lion: this salutary fear kept all mine on the watch, and even in the most open places, which exposed them to excruciating torment from thirst; for the heat had now become almost insupportable. I myself was exposed to the same inconvenience as much as they, but this did not make me abandon my hunting excursions.

cursions. It was a matter of indifference to me whether I walked or stood still: my tent was so intolerably hot that I could not remain in it; but, upon such occasions, my beard well soaked afforded me considerable relief: I derived some advantage also from the form of my hat, which I moistened in the like manner. In these critical moments, when oppressed by an unquenchable thirst, having remarked that the quantity of water I drank served only to inflame me the more, I resolved to drink in future as the dogs do, that is to lap. This singular mode gave me wonderful ease, for a very small quantity of water was then enough to quench my thirst, and I no longer dreaded any inconvenience from it.

During our stay on the banks of the river Platte we met with little disturbance from lions. Our musquets, which thundered on all sides during the day, kept them at a distance, though we heard them roaring every night; but, except once, they never ventured so near us as to occasion any alarm. The panthers also, at the rising and setting of the sun, gave us signs of their being on the banks of the river; but they kept at a respectable distance. In the middle of the night they advanced much nearer to us, but we were constantly warned of their approach by our dogs, and the following morning we could judge by their traces how far they had exposed themselves. Necessity alone renders all these species of carnivorous animals bold, for they naturally dread the sight of man; and I am of opinion, that the dangers to be apprehended from their being in the neighbourhood have been too much exaggerated. The only two kinds of antelopes which are to be found here, not being sufficient to satisfy their voracity; they choose rather to follow those numerous hordes who travel from one canton to another; and they have then an opportunity to select such food as may be most agreeable to them, and of making a terrible havock among their flocks.

As my neighbours saw that I was determined to ascend the snow mountains, they advised me to be upon my guard, and not to continue long in them, as the Boshmen were at this time in great force. I did not intend to carry my whole caravan thither, for this foolish project would not have been practicable; but as I was desirous

firous of examining a few of their fummits, and of traversing them only in the day-time with my chasseurs, I advanced as near to the bottom of them as I possibly could, and established my camp at the distance of three hundred paces from the savage horde. I expected to find on the fummit, as I had been told, a considerable volcano, that emitted smoke and flames; but I saw nothing that had any resemblance to such a phenomenon. By the assistance of my spy-glass, I discovered an immense extent of country stretched out towards the north, and bounded only by the horizon; and on the most elevated peaks and the plain spaces pyramids of flints and sand, exactly like those found upon downs. I endeavoured, but in vain, to discover some shells; I observed no fragments or remains that had the least affinity to any marine production. My attention was principally directed to birds; and I had the good fortune to discover and kill a few that were very uncommon, particularly a most beautiful species of widow bird, that concealed itself in the long grass which almost every where overspread these high mountains.

During the whole of my excursions, which ended always at sun-set, I never saw any of the Boshmen but once. There were only three of them, and they were traversing the back part of a mountain opposite to that on which I was; but they did not think proper to attack us. We indeed carried nothing with us that could tempt them; and these three vagabonds had perhaps been among those to whom I had so recently given chase, and in all probability remembered the terror into which I had thrown them. These infamous wretches do not form, as has been falsely supposed, a particular nation; nor are they a people who have had their origin in those places where they are now found. Boshmen is a name composed of two Dutch words, which signify *bush men*, or *men of the woods*: and it is under this appellation that the inhabitants of the Cape, and all the Dutch in general, Whether in Africa or America, distinguish those malefactors or assassins who desert from the colonies in order to escape punishment. In a word, they are what in the French West-India islands are called *Marroon Negroes*. These Boshmen, therefore, far from being a distinct species,

cie
cu
eve
wh
thi
live
aba
ters
fiste
stee
ther
they
plain
tere
an a
their
with
then
till,
mass
trem
son is
ti, th
that
cunni
only
pany
prints
the in
them
plund
of bet
they a
them
the too
living
them t
and fe
they a
their b
Ther
tentots,

cies, as has been even lately asserted, are only a promiscuous assemblage of mulattoes, negroes, and mestizos, of every species, and sometimes of Hottentots and Bastards; who all differing in colour, resemble each other in nothing but in villany. They are real land pirates, who live under a chief, without laws and without discipline; abandoned to the utmost misery and despair; base deserters, who have no other resources to procure them a subsistence but plundering and crimes. They retire to the steepest rocks, and the most inaccessible caverns, and there they pass their lives. From these elevated places they command an extensive prospect over the surrounding plains, lie in wait for the unwary traveller and the scattered flocks, pour down upon them with the velocity of an arrow, and suddenly falling upon the inhabitants and their cattle, slaughter them without distinction. Loaded with booty, and whatever they can carry with them, they then repair to their gloomy caves, which they never leave, till, like the lions, hunger again impels them to fresh massacres. But as treachery always marches with a trembling step, and as the presence of one resolute person is sufficient to overawe whole troops of these banditti, they carefully avoid such plantations as they are sure that the owners themselves reside upon. Chicane and cunning, the usual resources of timid souls, are the only plans they follow, and the sole guides that accompany them in their excursions. In such places as the prints of their feet too strongly impressed, might alarm the inhabitants, and occasion a pursuit, they disguise them by a wonderful address, to which our European plunderers, more impetuous and impatient, never think of betaking themselves: they always march backwards if they are not shod; but if they wear sandals, they fasten them to their feet in such a way that the heel answers to the toes. When they carry off a considerable number of living animals, they disperse them, giving the charge of them to several of their gang, divided into small flocks, and setting them away by different roads; and thus, if they are pursued, they always make the greater part of their booty safely their own.

There is another nation, wholly different from the Hottentots, and is confounded also by the name of Boshmen.

Although

Although in their speaking they have the same clappings as the Hottentots, they have however a particular pronunciation and expressions peculiar to themselves. In some cantons they are called *Chinese Hottentot*, Chinese Hottentots, because their colour approaches near to that of the Chinese found at the Cape; and, like them, they are of a small stature. On account of the affinity of their language, I consider these people, as well as the great and lesser Nimiquas, of whom I shall have occasion soon to speak, as a particular race of Hottentots; and although the planters mistake and confound the former by the common title of Boshmen, it is, notwithstanding true that the savages in the desert, who have no manner of connection with the Dutch settlements, distinguish them only by the designation of *Houfwaana*.

This nation, whatever name may be given it, inhabited formerly the Camdebo, the Bocke-Veld, and the Rugge-Veld; but the usurpations of the whites, whose victims they have been like the other savages, compelled them to take flight, and to seek shelter in very remote places. At present they inhabit that vast country comprehended between Caffraria and the great Nimiqua land; and of all those people, whom the covetousness of the Europeans has treated with cruelty, there are none who retain stronger recollection of injuries sustained, or who hold the name of whites in greater abhorrence. Never will the perfidy of the planters be obliterated from their minds, nor the base return, which many eminent favours has met with from them. *Vengeance* is perpetually in their mouths, so strong is their hatred; however, though constantly in search of an opportunity to wreck this vengeance, they generally find it when too late. When I pay a visit to the hordes of these Houfwaana, in passing under the tropic, I shall give a more particular account of them.

“ The author now proceeds to take notice of a particular appearance in the formation of certain parts in some Hottentot females, which, though in some respects valuable to the naturalist and philosopher, would only

“only prove offensive to the general class of readers, as
“very indelicate. It occupies a very few pages only of
“the original, and all we apprehend that can be learned
“from them, is, that this peculiarity which has been
“mentioned, and is to be met with in various romances and
“books of travels, such as John Struys, &c. is no parti-
“cular *lufus naturæ* as has been suggested, but merely the
“effect of custom, and a practice adopted and put in ex-
“ecution upon females in their early years, as a sign of
“modesty, though perhaps an improper one. The read-
“ing of these pages, furnishes another remark on which
“the author dwells with great energy, and that is, the
“difficulty he had to get himself satisfied on this head,
“from the very great modesty of these women. He in-
“troduces the following paragraph on this head.”

Ye valuable and prudent mothers, into whose hands this work may accidentally fall, you will scarcely believe that your chaste and virtuous daughters, whom you bring up with the flattering expectations of seeing them attain your excellence, would be in as little danger from corruption and the baneful consequences of bad example among African savages, as in those quiet and solitary retreats where wisdom, it is said, keeps guard upon innocence, and carries from its view whatever might have a tendency to corrupt it, or offend: let not Nature be charged with a crime, and do not vaunt too much of your instructions and astonishing precautions; they are occasioned by despising her rules.

Having now concluded my remarks, and examined, as far as circumstances would admit, the different chains and the most delightful spots of the snow mountains, I began to think of leaving for ever this dismal country. My people strongly entreated me to carry them to Carouw, and to pass it before the excessive heat had entirely dried up what little stagnant water we might possibly find there, and lest we should not find pastures enough for our oxen, which now for a long time had been severe sufferers from the intense heat of the season. Being therefore equally hurried by the circumstances of the time, as desirous of returning to the Cape, and no longer finding in my excursions the same satisfaction and amusement as formerly, either that fatigue had now cooled my ardour, or that other schemes,
and

and powerful recollection, had again resumed that empire in my mind, which a view of the greatest novelties had destroyed, I proceeded on the 2d of February, and directed my course towards the south west. Some of the horde accompanied us three leagues, to help us to cross the river *Jubres*, which they imagined would be greatly swelled by the excessive rains. When we came to it we began to think of erecting rafts; but our guides who were acquainted with a commodious passage a quarter of a league below, prevented this useless fatigue, which would have likewise consumed much time. With them we reconnoitred the ford which they spoke of; I supposed, after trying its depth with my horse, that, by carefully elevating the boxes and lading of my three carriages by branches and brush-wood about eight or ten inches, we might be able to pass without sustaining any damage; we accordingly executed this business with equal dexterity and success. Our companions, indeed, were very useful to us, upon this occasion; they passed the river, and spent the night with us, in order to help us to load our carriages again, and to arrange our matters next day. We bade each other adieu, after I had paid them for their labour very handsomely.

In this district we now entered, I met with a prodigious number of those green and golden cuckoos, which I have already mentioned, and several new species with which I increased my collection. The same day we came to another river, of the name of which I was ignorant; but I named it after my respectable friend Mr Boers. It is here that the dry plains of Carouw begin; and I noticed that this ungrateful country, or rather sands, was covered as far as we could see with coarse shrubs and weeds: upon another side rocks fully as barren, exhibited in every place to the regretting eye the dismal picture of devastation and death. Little tufts of grass were all we could discern, and even these appeared to spring up reluctantly to keep our flocks in life.

After marching five hours we came to the river Voo-gel, which empties itself into that of Sondag, this we had passed a little before near the mouth, and which we were soon to see again near its source. We suffered more and more every day from the heat, and travelling be-
came

came very painful to us. I however still amused myself in my leisure hours with hunting; and I killed, in the course of my journey, another French field-duck of a new species. The following day we reached the river Sondag at a very early hour. The aspect of this spot, much less dismal, served at least to revive my hopes: superb avenues of mimosas, watered by the river, presented every where around us magnificent views; and as they were in full blossom, they perfumed the surrounding air with their sweet and delicious odour. A thousand different species of birds, and most beautiful insects, made me remain here till the 8th; when having noticed that, however large the quantity of pins which I had brought with me from the Cape had been, they now began to fail, a thought occurred to me to use the little prickles of the mimosa in their room, and this I found answered the same purpose effectually.

Having left the Sondag behind me, I fell in with sixteen Hottentots with their arms and baggage, upon the borders of the *Swart-Rivier*, or Black River. They had left Camdebo, to join, at the bottom of the snow mountains, the horde which we had left there; and I learned from them that they had been compelled to this emigration by formidable troops of Boshmen, who were carrying fire and sword through Camdebo, and burning the plantations, in order to carry away the ammunition, arms, and whole riches of the inhabitants. Nothing could disconcert me more than this intelligence, equally ungracious and unexpected; for it raised the alarm in every breast, and revived our former terrors. Persuaded that any farther explanation would only disturb the imaginations of my coward Hottentots still more, I ordered them all instantly to follow me. They were already begun to whisper about returning the same way which we had come, and I looked on to the time when my authority was to come to an issue; but the stoutest of my people, who did not hesitate about accompanying me, led all the rest to follow their example. Observing that Slinger, whose conduct was so very improper at Koks-Kraal, was the principal person here that shewed the greatest resistance, and that this very day he executed his duty in a very suspicious manner, I resolved, to make the first example of

him, to strike a damp into his timid companions whom he had seduced. That evening, when I came to the river Camdebo, which has its name from the country it passed through, I ordered him that moment to leave my caravan; reproaching him likewise as having been the first occasion of that apprehension and consternation, which had hindered all my people from going with me into Caffraria, and with having forced me by his blameable resistance to leave unexecuted the highest part of my schemes, being defective in strength, spirit, and assistance, to enable me to undertake and execute it. I then paid him the wages which were due to him, made him restore his effects and some provisions, and threatened to hunt him as I would a wild beast, if he ever appeared in my presence again. He was so much astonished and overcome by this address, and the violence with which I uttered the last words, that he took up his wallet and set off with speed. My people supposed that he would seek the nearest plantation, or join those Hottentots we had seen in the morning; and I expected that he would have made some excuse for his behaviour, or that some of his neighbours would have pled for him; but I was very happy when he took another course. This spirited punishment of Slinger was of the greatest benefit to me, and, during all the rest of my journey, produced all that effect which I wished.

On the 9th of February I left the Camdebo, when several of my oxen being seized with the *klauw-sikte*, they found the journey very arduous. As ease and refreshments were the sole remedies which could restore them to their former health soon, I made choice of a convenient meadow on one of the windings which the river makes, among the mimosas, where I settled my camp, resolving to continue some days there. There was however no occasion to desire my people to be upon their guard, for they stood too much in terror of the Boshmen to fail in this part of their duty, or to relax in their circumspection. We were at this time in that very canton, where we heard that these plunderers, were spreading terror and destruction. As our provisions were now running short, and as we no longer met with large game, I determined to procure some, if I could, in order to salt

it;

it; and, for this reason I undertook a few hunting excursions, which conducted me to a greater or less distance from my camp. Having one day pursued an antelope-elk very hard, I wandered a good way off with one of my best shooters, who accompanied me; and in the corner of a thick forest of mimosas we quickly observed a Hottentot, in search of the nymphæ of ants, which is a favourite dish among these savages. The moment he observed us, he snatched up his bow and quiver with great haste, and fled; but clapping spurs to my horse, I soon made up with him. By the strong marks of fear and embarrassment he shewed, I concluded that he was a Boshman. At this time his life was in my power: in these wilds I could have acted as sovereign, and punished him, had I been so disposed, for all the enormities of his countrymen, and for the inexcusable crime of belonging to these plunderers; but I had hitherto no reason to complain of these people, and I was besides anxious to profit by this meeting, and to procure fresh information: a planter however would have conducted himself in a quite different stile. From my countenance he plainly saw that I had no design to do him any harm; and, after some questions as to our mutual situations, and which he could not reply to without emotion, he began to resume his spirit, and to place some confidence in me. As I complained to him of the want of game in the places which I had passed through, he told me where I would be sure to find what I wanted. I desired my Hottentot, who had now come up to me, to present him with a part of his tobacco; and, after wishing he would practise more moderation and honesty, I turned my horse's head, and continued my journey. I had scarcely however proceeded fifty paces, when my companion, who had continued with him a few minutes to kindle his pipe, and finish their conversation, bawled out after me. Amazed at his roaring, I instantly returned, and, when I came up with him, I found that the treacherous Boshman, had an arrow in his hand, and was attempting to wound my Hottentot in the head. Observing that the countenance of my poor Hottentot was already besmeared with blood, in a transport of rage, I jumped from my horse, and discharging my gun at his breast, the traitor was stunned and dropped immediately,

while my Hottentot in the excess of his fury collected his adversary's arms, and put an end to his existence by trampling on him with his feet. Terrified at his wound, he feared that every moment he would die from the effect of the poison; for the rascal had shot an arrow at him the moment they had parted. The wound, which was directly above his nose, seemed to me more hazardous for that reason, but it was luckily very slight; the edge of the iron head had only touched his, and it is never poisoned. Washing the wound with urine, I encouraged him in the best way I could, persuading him that it was not deadly; and as I always carried a phial of volatile alkali in my pocket, which Mr Percheron, the French agent, presented me with when I left the Cape, in order to dissipate even every appearance of poison, I tore away a few pieces from my shirt, and dipping them in the alkali, applied them to the affected part; but these offices of friendship, so far from elevating the spirits of the unlucky Hottentot, made him continue to attribute the severe pains which the caustic occasioned to the effects of poison: for my own part, what I was chiefly surprised at, and what I looked upon as the influence of my fortunate star, was, that he had not been slain on the spot; had that happened, the assassin, armed with a gun which he might have seized from him, would doubtless have watched for me in the nearest turning, and consigned me to the same fate. Lifting up the rascal's bow and quiver, and leaving his body terribly mangled, I quickly returned to my camp. This affair soon circulated and alarmed the country; and my Hottentot, convinced that he would not be in life by morning, still increased the terror of my people. It would have been idle to attempt to allay their dismay; they all were of the same mind with my patient, and supposed that he could not outlive the night: but it passed on without the smallest appearance of any alarming symptoms; and the pain abating, he began to think he would escape with a good fright. When he awoke in the morning, his companions, amazed to see him alive, recovered the use of their tongues, and blustered in a thousand different ways, as is the common way when danger is over. They supposed, particularly, that the death of the assassin was the luckiest circumstance

for

for us in this adventure; for had he escaped and followed us through the thickets and turnings, he would have discovered our retreat. He would not have failed to inform the rest of the Boshmen, who would have suddenly fallen upon us, in a numerous body, and butchered us without mercy. The different conjectures of my people, and their never-ceasing prattling, entertained me much, and were by no means uninteresting. I judged from it that they would in time become familiar with danger; and I was much pleased that they had seen it so near; for I knew no impediment more detrimental to my plan than fanciful fears.

We proceeded the next day, and during our march I entertained myself with shooting, either upon the one side or the other, as the weather was very favourable. Having raised a female ostrich, I went up to her nest, which was the largest I had ever seen, I found thirty-eight eggs altogether in it, and thirteen others spread about at some distance, each of them in a small cavity. They were very unequal in size, and, upon examining them more narrowly, I observed nine much less than the rest: upon this discovery I desired my people to stop, and to unyoke the oxen at the distance of a quarter of a league from the others, whilst I went to hide myself in a thicket, which was about a gun-shot from the spot, and from which I could have a full sight of the animal if it should return. Having waited a little, the female came and sat down upon the eggs, and, while I continued in the bush, three more came up to her. They relieved one another by turns, one only continuing a quarter of an hour upon the nest, while one of the new comers sat by her side. This led me to suppose that sometimes, and probably when the nights are rainy or cold, two or more agree together to cover the eggs more completely. About sun-set, a male came, and made up to the nest in order to set himself on it; for the males sit as well as the females. Having now the wished-for opportunity, I fired my gun and killed him on the spot; upon which the others, terrified by the noise of the report, got up, and in their hurry broke several of the eggs. On making up to the nest, I observed, with regret, that the young ones had been just ready to burst the shell, for they were com-

pletely covered with down. The male I killed had not one beautiful white feather; they were all ready stripped, and now quite dirty. I however took out such of the black feathers as seemed to be most entire, and leaving the place, I sent off several of my Hottentots in quest of the thirteen eggs which were spread about the nest, strictly charging them not to touch the others. Anxious to know whether the females would return during the night time, I went to the nest at break of day; but found every thing swept away from the place, only a few pieces of shells lying up and down, which evidently shewed that we had prepared an excellent dish to some jackals, or perhaps hyænas.

This singularity as to the female ostrich, which unites with several others for incubation in the same nest, the rather deserves the attention of the naturalist, as it is not a general rule, it shews that certain circumstances may at times determine the conduct of these animals, and modify their actions, which would tend to exalt their instinct, by producing a more sagacious foresight than is commonly allowed them. It is very probable that these animals unite together, that they may be in the better situation to defend their young? I shall have an opportunity to enter more at large on this subject, in the description of the ostrich which I purpose to publish hereafter. I now flatter myself with the idea that the public will read with satisfaction plain and authentic accounts, which will exhibit rather a description of the customs and manners of these animals than wearisome details, which are too frequently repetitions about the number of their feathers, their proportions, and the exact size of all their parts. Absurd narrations! which discover as little of the variety of the species, as the difference of their characters.

On the way from the nest to our camp, my dogs raised a hare, and set out in chace of it; upon which I rode quickly after them, and saw it take refuge in the cavities of a small barrow, which was accidentally in the road. Having sought it with pains I at length discovered the very spot to which it retreated; and having shut the mouth of the hole where it had entered, I pulled down the stones and the gravel of which this height consisted; but I can hardly describe my surprise when I discovered that

that it was a Hottentot tomb. I however got the hare sitting among some bones, and catching it alive I took it with me. As my dogs were engaged otherwise, in a place where they could not see me, through an emotion of generosity, and as if disdaining to put this weak animal to death any other way than with the arms I commonly used in hunting, I set it at liberty. This behaviour my people attributed to a motive which made me very high in their opinion, and I was very cautious not to undeceive them. They supposed, and with the greatest satisfaction, that I had let this animal escape, not because I considered it as of little value, but because I respected the asylum of the dead, and was desirous of rendering this natural homage to the tomb of one of their countrymen. Covering the bones with the same gravel which I had pulled off them, we took another road; and in the mean time a few of my people killed four gnous, which we spent three days in salting.

On the 16th I came to a plantation, the property of two brothers who were free negroes, one of whom was married to a young mulatto woman. These worthy people received me with the utmost joy, and offered me the free use of every thing they possessed. But, shall I say it? my heart, agitated by a thousand different sensations, received with indifference their caresses and their tender solicitude. I found in them nearly the same manners and customs as to be found in the civilized world. I had now returned to society, and I again saw fields, utensils, possessions, established order, masters; in a word, I was on a plantation. So great indulgence became burdensome to me; an involuntary impulse hurried me from this retreat: I often walked about, my eyes straying from one side to another, as if to find again my lost way; I oppressed the house with complaints, and, if I may say so, surrounded it with my sighs. All was now gone; the torrents, hills, majestic forests, impracticable roads, hordes of savages and their delightful huts, all disappeared. All excited my regret, even to wild animals; which, for the time, I imagined entertained sentiments of friendship and kindness towards me. I know not whether these whimsical ideas are common with other men; but the more I think on them, the more I am satisfied that they belong to nature. Powerful
charm

charm of liberty! Invincible force, which I shall carry with me to the grave! Thou changest into pleasures the most laborious fatigues, into amusements the greatest dangers, into pleasant sights the most dismal objects; and thou strewedst my paths with the flowers of happiness and repose, at a season and age when fortune seemed to lead me to search for them elsewhere. Along with these two negroes I eat bread for the first time during the space of a year, but I had nearly forgot the taste of it. Though I at first proposed to stop here only one day, I remained three days. We had still a great extent of country to traverse, some enormous mountains to cross, and great difficulties to encounter in the deserts of Camdebo; the awful aspect of which every where present, instead of the verdure and natural gardens of the Pampoen Kraal, nothing but hideous rocks, sands, and flints, sometimes grey, sometimes reddish, and sometimes of a yellow colour. As I approached towards the plantations danger decreased, and still adhering to my ideas, I flattered myself with the hope of more enjoyments. If I except therefore the places where I had just halted, I followed my plan with equal constancy, when I returned and when I departed; but I embraced the opportunity which chance had afforded me, by falling in with these two brothers, to procure provisions for the subsistence of my people, and I took precautions accordingly. They supplied me with a large quantity of biscuit; and I made a grateful return for this essential service, by giving them in exchange powder, shot, and gun flints; all valuable articles, which had long been scarce, though it is absolutely necessary that a plantation should always be furnished with them, either for the protection of the cattle or repelling the Boshmen. For this great favour, they would have readily granted me any thing I might ask.

I set out on the 19th, at four in the afternoon; but the sun, more scorching than ever, for two days excessively tormented us. We wandered about, and could not find a single drop of water, we had recourse to some jars, which I had desired to be filled at the house of the negro brothers; but we were forced to confine ourselves to a particular quantity as had frequently happened.

Having

Having on the 21st passed the bed of the Kriga, at that time dry, which we had passed the evening before, I fell in with two inhabitants of Camdebo, returning from the Cape, and upon the way to their own habitation. As I had not now heard from my friends at the town for upwards of a year, I was happy to find that, by the assistance of France, the Cape had been protected from any attacks of the English, and that the colony was still the property of the Dutch; but the satisfaction which this intelligence gave me was soon counteracted by hearing of the indisposition of my benefactor, whom these travellers told me they had left in a very hazardous situation at the hot baths, the last application of sick people in Africa. This intelligence cast such a damp upon my mind, as to embitter all the rest of my journey.

Anxious again to see a friend to whom I was bound by many claims, I anxiously hastened my journey; but the fear of finding him in a languishing condition corrupted the pleasure which I enjoyed by anticipation. These two planters forewarned me that I would suffer much by the way, on account of the drought and want of water; and that, as I carried a great number of cattle along with me, I could hope for no resources but in the stormy rains which might come on: that, besides these inconveniences, the country was infested by the Boshmen; and that they had even plundered them of thirty-two oxen, and massacred their herdsmen at the passage of the Black River. This last part of their information did not prevent me from proceeding; for, since the example of severity which I had been forced to give, my people never shewed any signs of timidity, and I believe that along with me they would have been capable of braving all the banditti of Camdebo. I was however unwilling to expose them rashly: I could not march under night, for this would have deprived me of every advantage; and most of my oxen were now unfit for service by a distemper in their hoofs; so that as I could not relieve those that were sound, I made them proceed before us under a strong guard, that we might not be hindered in our march.

When I came in this way to *Kriga-Fontyn*, or the Fountain of Kriga, my oxen got as much water as they required, but it was so very brackish, that the Hottentots
who

who drank it were seized with colics and violent diarrhoeas. As I was sounding the foil, and examining whether this water might not cause disorders still more dangerous, I was greatly surprised to observe Kees, who was always the first every where, draw from the vessel a crab of about three or four inches in diameter. This circumstance was indeed most astonishing, as the fountain was surrounded by solid rock, and had no apparent outlet whatever. My ape seemed to eat his crab with so much pleasure, that I ordered thirty of them to be caught; and when they were roasted I found them excellent. Four or five discharges of my fusée procured us above forty moor-fowl of a very beautiful species, which were accustomed to come by thousands, and light on the borders of this fountain. The Hottentots of the colonies call them *Nimiqua partridges*, because in the rainy season they all emigrate towards the tropics. Reckoning from the time when we encamped at this fountain, we found nothing but coarse plants and locusts: we were indeed in a most desolate place; four of my oxen, having not strength sufficient to follow us, remained on the spot; and I saw, with no small grief, that my dogs halted, and could scarcely drag themselves along. As the soles of their feet were torn and cut to the very quick, I ordered them to be rubbed over with grease, that they might be induced to lick them, and to be put into my carriages until they should be in a condition to walk. My horses being attacked by the same disorder as my oxen, I caused small bags or covers to be made of skins, and, having greased their hoofs well, I fattened them on their feet by tying them above the tarsus. I wished to subject my oxen to the same operation, but these intractable animals would never have submitted to it peaceably; besides grease and skins would not have been sufficient. My carriages also were in a most wretched condition; for, as they had not been moistened for a long time, they made a noise when they moved forwards like so many rattles. Though we fell in with different fountains, and the beds of several rivers or torrents which we crossed in our way, and from which we hoped for relief, we were still deceived in our expectations. Our animals were now forced to put their noses to the earth, and lick such places as still apparently

retained

retained some moisture; being besides without any kind of succulent grass, we had no other remedy left us but to gather a few coarse parched herbs, which produced acute pains in their bowels, so that they lost their flesh, and looked like so many skeletons.

Thus distressed we travelled on till the evening of the 21st. Having passed the *Swart Rivier*, or Black River, which had as little water in its bed as the rest, we were upon the very point of unyoking our oxen, when I observed a flock of sheep. I ran up instantly to the keeper, and being told that he belonged to the planter who dwelt at the distance of scarcely a league, we pursued our route towards it, and encamped near a large pond, where we at length had the satisfaction of finding water in abundance. The owner of these sheep was named *Adam Robenhymmer*, and his plantation was called *Keveec-Valey*. I received every mark of politeness from this gentleman, as well as from his family, which consisted of only two daughters. One of them, *Dina Sagrias-de-Beer*, the daughter of his wife by a former husband, was one of the most beautiful African ladies I had ever seen. These charming hosts pressed me to spend a few days with them; and the bewitching *Dina* joined to her invitation such mild and natural graces, that I readily yielded to her repeated solicitations, and consented to remain a few days. In the evening, however, I did not fail to pay a visit to my camp, according to my usual custom; as the place where I was, and the necessity of preserving good order, made me more than ever lay it down as an invariable rule not to sleep out of it: I was besides so much accustomed to my hard mattress, that a softer or more commodious bed would really have prevented me from sleeping. This agreeable repose for a few days was above all extremely serviceable to my poor cattle, worn out with hunger and fatigue: I was every moment apprehensive that I should be obliged to abandon my carriages and my effects; but this last halting revived us a little. The situation of this spot was delightful; the scenery around it was beautifully variegated; and the environs of the plantation afforded my oxen, as well as my people, abundance of every thing proper for restoring their lost strength, had I only remained longer in this retreat: but I was more and
more

more sensible of the necessity of approaching the Cape, and my exhausted imagination rendered my return indispensable. I was therefore once more obliged to tear myself from so many attractions, and to pursue my journey. The beautiful Dina having learned of my people (for she informed herself of every thing) that the biscuits I had procured from the negroes were almost at an end, she begged me to accept a small supply which she had made herself. On the first of March, after returning thanks to my amiable hosts, I took leave of them, at five in the afternoon, and marched forwards to the *Gamka*, or *Leuw-Rivier*, the Lion River; where we arrived at nine in the evening, and encamped. Lions formerly were very common near this river, because antelopes were also found here in great abundance; but when the inhabitants approached nearer to each other, the antelopes disappeared, and lions consequently are become much scarcer. Having heard at Keveec-Valey that three formidable troops of Boshmen were ranging in the neighbourhood of that place, I thought it would be imprudent to penetrate farther the first night; besides this, I had been informed that, after crossing the *Gamka*, until I reached the Buffaloes River, I should not find a single drop of water. The distance between these rivers was full twenty-five leagues: that I might not perish with thirst, it was necessary to perform this passage in two days, and it was impossible to travel during the heat of the day without destroying both my people and my cattle. I resolved therefore to remain two days on the Lion River, to strengthen and refresh my oxen as much as possible; and, in the evening of the second day, banishing every idea of fear, and paying little regard to the terror of my Hottentots, I resumed my journey, taking the precaution to station my whole caravan between two carriages, which served as an advanced and a rear-guard. A forced march of two days, or rather two nights, performed with the greatest regularity, conducted us to the banks of the river which we had so long wished to see. During the night-time I had not neglected to order my people to discharge their pieces on both sides of us every six minutes; and from time to time I gave my horses, which were ready to faint with the heat and fatigue, a refreshment of
water

water from my jars. My cattle had neither eat nor drank; they all panted for breath, and seemed every moment ready to drop down on the spot; however, though it was late in the evening before we came to the Buffalo River, my relays, and all the cattle that marched at liberty, having observed the stream, began to run forwards over the meadows in the greatest confusion to allay their thirst. Those which drew the carriages found their courage revive, and completed the passage in less than a quarter of an hour; but it was owing to the attention of my people, who cut the traces of the most intractable, that the three carriages were not thrown into the river. The whole of us followed the example of the cattle, and in the bath I soon forgot the fatigue I had undergone.

Having lighted our fires some of our oxen joined us; but I was very uneasy about the rest, till we heard them making a noise among the bushes around, and I supposed that they were in quest of food. They however arrived all at day-break, except two oxen, which we never found afterwards: my goat likewise strayed, and did not come again till some time after in the course of the day following.

Getting up in the morning I was very much delighted to find myself in a beautiful country, which the darkness of the night had prevented my observing. The river was narrow, but the abundance and depth of the waters diffused throughout the neighbourhood a freshness so much the more delightful, as the heat was excessive: it runs with a hundred turnings through beautiful green fields, and I never saw such agreeable groves as those with which its banks are crowned. An infinite number of partridges and moor-fowl by their cries formed a very striking contrast with those of different kinds of ducks, herons, brown swans, and flamingoes, with which the river was covered. All my people with one voice having begged me to stop here some days, I readily agreed, and was very happy that they should have anticipated my wishes. This proved one of those pleasant retreats which demonstrate that the fancies of poets do not in every case in their descriptions go beyond limits of truth and nature. This place, however, where we had spent the night, was not the most favourable one; some huge rocks in the neighbourhood

more sensible of the necessity of approaching the Cape, and my exhausted imagination rendered my return indispensable. I was therefore once more obliged to tear myself from so many attractions, and to pursue my journey. The beautiful Dina having learned of my people (for she informed herself of every thing) that the biscuits I had procured from the negroes were almost at an end, she begged me to accept a small supply which she had made herself. On the first of March, after returning thanks to my amiable hosts, I took leave of them, at five in the afternoon, and marched forwards to the *Gamka*, or *Leuw-Rivier*, the Lion River; where we arrived at nine in the evening, and encamped. Lions formerly were very common near this river, because antelopes were also found here in great abundance; but when the inhabitants approached nearer to each other, the antelopes disappeared, and lions consequently are become much scarcer. Having heard at Keveec-Valey that three formidable troops of Boshtmen were ranging in the neighbourhood of that place, I thought it would be imprudent to penetrate farther the first night; besides this, I had been informed that, after crossing the *Gamka*, until I reached the Buffaloes River, I should not find a single drop of water. The distance between these rivers was full twenty-five leagues: that I might not perish with thirst, it was necessary to perform this passage in two days, and it was impossible to travel during the heat of the day without destroying both my people and my cattle. I resolved therefore to remain two days on the Lion River, to strengthen and refresh my oxen as much as possible; and, in the evening of the second day, banishing every idea of fear, and paying little regard to the terror of my Hottentots, I resumed my journey, taking the precaution to station my whole caravan between two carriages, which served as an advanced and a rear-guard. A forced march of two days, or rather two nights, performed with the greatest regularity, conducted us to the banks of the river which we had so long wished to see. During the night-time I had not neglected to order my people to discharge their pieces on both sides of us every six minutes; and from time to time I gave my horses, which were ready to faint with the heat and fatigue, a refreshment of
water

water from my jars. My cattle had neither eat nor drank; they all panted for breath, and seemed every moment ready to drop down on the spot; however, though it was late in the evening before we came to the Buffalo River, my relays, and all the cattle that marched at liberty, having observed the stream, began to run forwards over the meadows in the greatest confusion to allay their thirst. Those which drew the carriages found their courage revive, and completed the passage in less than a quarter of an hour; but it was owing to the attention of my people, who cut the traces of the most intractable, that the three carriages were not thrown into the river. The whole of us followed the example of the cattle, and in the bath I soon forgot the fatigue I had undergone.

Having lighted our fires some of our oxen joined us; but I was very uneasy about the rest, till we heard them making a noise among the bushes around, and I supposed that they were in quest of food. They however arrived all at day-break, except two oxen, which we never found afterwards: my goat likewise strayed, and did not come again till some time after in the course of the day following.

Getting up in the morning I was very much delighted to find myself in a beautiful country, which the darkness of the night had prevented my observing. The river was narrow, but the abundance and depth of the waters diffused throughout the neighbourhood a freshness so much the more delightful, as the heat was excessive: it runs with a hundred turnings through beautiful green fields, and I never saw such agreeable groves as those with which its banks are crowned. An infinite number of partridges and moor-fowl by their cries formed a very striking contrast with those of different kinds of ducks, herons, brown swans, and flamingoes, with which the river was covered. All my people with one voice having begged me to stop here some days, I readily agreed, and was very happy that they should have anticipated my wishes. This proved one of those pleasant retreats which demonstrate that the fancies of poets do not in every case in their descriptions go beyond limits of truth and nature. This place, however, where we had spent the night, was not the most favourable one; some huge rocks in the neighbourhood

covered both it and us in too great a degree, and might have put it in the power of the enemy to surprise us very easily : for this reason we took our carriages and baggage to the centre of a little meadow, which the turning of the river made nearly a peninsula, and there our tents were set up.

We were now eighty leagues from the plantation of the two negroes already mentioned ; and it is not easy to conceive what we underwent in this journey. What relief should I have got from the sheep which I exchanged with the Hottentots of Snewberg ! from that time we did not procure the most trifling article of game, and not a single pond of water pure enough to use without great care ; none of it could be drunk till we boiled it either with tea or coffee, to prevent, or rather to hide its hurtful and bad qualities.

The pleasantness of this place, and the abundance of every necessary which the Buffalo River procured us, were not the only motives that induced us to remain so long on its banks. I continued here till the 14th of the month, employed only in repairing my carriages, the ruined condition of which had for a long time given me great uneasiness. They were so much shattered, and the sun had so dried them, that they were ready to fall to pieces ; it was necessary above all to renew the wheels, as all the spokes were loose in the naves. I ordered them to be put into water to make the wood swell ; and they remained there a long time before they received any assistance from the hatchet. As for my part, I reviewed my collection, which was far from being in proper order ; and this business was a work of no small labour. Every thing almost that I had contained birds : my tea-chests, and my boxes for holding coffee and sugar, were all filled with them. I now expected soon to reach the centre of the colonies ; and I should have considered the slightest accident that might have happened to retard our march as a great misfortune. Being persuaded that we had nothing more to fear from the Boshmen, and seeing all my people sufficiently composed and freed from their terrors, I resolved to travel night and day ; and in consequence of this determination I departed on the 14th, at eve in the evening, observing the same order as before.

Having

Having halted at midnight, near the Matjes-Fontein, the atmosphere became overcast, and seemed to threaten a storm; but it passed by us, and next morning I crossed the Wet-Waater, and unyoked my cattle at *Conslapel*, an agreeable plantation, which the owners have been obliged to abandon on account of a scarcity of water. Though the season was now far advanced, the heat had not yet decreased, and we were obliged to remain inactive during the middle of the day, when the sun's rays darted upon us with the greatest force; we were scorched so much the more, as we could find no shade or place of shelter to secure us from them: the relaxed state in which we were did not even permit us to amuse ourselves with hunting. It is well known that stifling heat tends greatly to destroy the appetite, and that it corrupts meat whether fresh or salted, and renders it very disgusting; we delayed all kitchen work therefore for some time. My Hottentots slept in the day time: for my own part, I lived on Miss Dina's biscuits; and all the enjoyment I allowed myself was sleeping them in goat's milk, which I always eat with satisfaction. I cannot too warmly advise travellers who undertake such journeys as this, to procure a great many of these tractable and useful animals. They are very fond of man, are attached to him, follow him, occasion no inconvenience, and require little or no care. They will daily furnish enough for their support, and to allay their thirst; and these poor animals, which are not delicate like some other brutes, and are pleased with any thing, can undergo thirst a very long time before their milk fails.

Having crossed *Touws Rivier*, I advanced six leagues farther on the 16th and 17th; and, near Werkeerde-Valley, came to a very large lake, upon the borders of which there was a little plantation, which the owner, who was not there had committed to the charge of some Hottentots. Having found a planter here who had lately left the Cape to go to Camdebo, I was relieved of a burden which had long lain heavy on me, by being told that Mr Boers was quite recovered, and that he had come again to the town. In this place I had an opportunity of finding birds of different kinds, and, among the rest, some coots exactly the same with those of Europe; but

the marshes upon the lake supplied me with so many snipes that they were our ordinary provision.

On this plantation there were a great number of hogs one of which I purchased; but I was under the necessity of going and choosing it myself, and plucking it from the reeds; because, as I have already mentioned, when speaking of the manner in which they are brought up, these had become quite wild. I purchased some flour, to regale my people with the first bread they had eat since we set out: Klaas' wife made it ready, and she indeed did it remarkably well. Having left Werkeerde-Valey, we came on the 21st to another country, called the Boke-Veld, or plain of the spring-bocks, which were very numerous formerly; but now none of them were any where to be found. We observed several plantations on the surrounding hills, from which we vainly attempted to remove, for the farther we went the more frequent they became. I was under the necessity of passing close to that of John Pinar. Though he earnestly requested me to stop and refresh myself at his house, I declined his invitation, and pursued my journey; but the inhabitants, whether white men, Hottentots, or negroes, all hastened to see my caravan file off, almost in the same manner as in our great cities people flock to see some curious shew or uncommon spectacle. My beard, above all, in a country where neither Jews nor Capuchins are ever known, appeared to be a wonderful and an extraordinary phenomenon; though it put the children to flight, and struck a great terror into the women. After disembarassing myself with great difficulty from the importunity of the inquisitive, who harassed me with their questions, I reached, at half after eleven at night, a peaceful inhabited retreat, at the distance of three leagues: but the news of my return were spread abroad; and next morning, scarcely had day-light appeared, when more than twenty of the inhabitants, attracted by curiosity, surrounded my camp, that, whatever route I should pursue, it might be impossible for me to escape them. They had taken great delight in propagating a number of ridiculous tales about me; and they asked an hundred ridiculous questions at me one after another: they asserted, for instance, that I had brought with me waggon loads of gold-dust and jewels,

jewels, which I found in the rivers, or on rocks, never before examined. One of these credulous peasants entreated me to shew him that noble precious stone, excelling the diamond, and of the size of a hen's egg, which I found in the head of a huge serpent, with which I had fought a most desperate and bloody battle. These absurdities I take notice of merely to justify what I have said elsewhere as to that stupid thirst for the marvellous, by which the planters fill up their vacant hours, and overcome the languor by which they are oppressed.

I proposed to remain hid in the place where I was till night, but the curious people increased so much every minute, that I lost my patience entirely, and departed very abruptly. I attempted to avoid three or four plantations situated in the canton through which I was obliged to pass; importunity followed me on every side, so that I had no other refuge but to take advantage of the darkness of the night, and to sneak off like a malefactor, and hide myself below an enormous chain of hills named *Gloof*, which makes the boundaries of another country named *Roye-Sand*.

This chain, like an astonishing curtain, raised up by the hand of misfortune to front me, seemed to be placed there to disconcert me still more, and to encrease my unhappiness. It was needful however either to surmount this obstacle, or to take a very long round, the extent of which I was ignorant of, nor how much time might be needed. I was no longer however stimulated by that impetuous ardour which I had evidenced at my outset; nor by that intrepidity which cherished the love of novelties within me, and the anxious desire of being the first to seize a country at once curious and little known. I found myself the one time stopped by discouragement, and the next hurried on by gratitude and friendship. I therefore formed my determinations, to climb as well as I could to the top of the hill. The steepness of the road, and the quagmires which I had to pass through in this passage, almost terrified me. Yet this is the common road of the neighbouring planters, who are more inclined to run the risque of losing their cattle and carriages than agree together to prepare a proper road, or at least to

repair some broken parts; a striking evidence both of their carelessness and sloth.

With an eye to my own safety, I determined to undertake this business. I spent all the day of the 24th in cutting down branches of trees to fill up the deep fissures, and to cover them over with stones, sand, and earth. I succeeded in this; and on the 25th, in about four hours time, thanks to the precautions which we had taken, and the exertions which we employed, at the expence of a very little loss, we had the inexpressible satisfaction to pass the terrible precipice, the only one that we had occasion to fear. The planters name this horrible road *Master-Hoec*, or Master's Corner. We pitched our camp at the bottom of the hill, on the opposite side; and the day following halted in the morning at the entrance of *Roye-Sand*, hard by the ruins of a plantation which seemed to have been long forsaken.

I consider that this canton is very improperly named *Roye-Sand*, or Red Sand, for I saw none of that colour: I observed, on the contrary, that it was quite yellow.

This is a rich corn country; and the crops are every where good and plentiful. We had a view from time to time of pleasant plantations, every one more agreeably situated than the other; and the variety of the buildings occasioned every where such delightful prospects as gave the highest gratification to the sight. It is not impossible that, as I had been accustomed for sixteen months to prospects of a bolder and grander nature, the contrast of wild countries, and their dwellings equally dismal and singular, with the new arrangement of things that came in view, might leave a deeper impression on my mind. But whatever may be in this, I never wearied in contemplating these delightful views.

These various fanciful and romantic ideas which had flattered my imagination, and all those melancholy ideas which I had indulged on leaving the savages, began now to wear away; and reason, again resuming its dominion, convinced me that, not being allotted to this wandering and precarious life, I had other duties to discharge, and other objects to look after. I already smiled in imagination at different circumstances, the recollection of which brought full to my view my former enjoyments and past manner

manner of life. Friendship in a particular manner, arrayed in her full graces, and in the way she should be to satisfy delicate and feeling minds, seemed to call me at a distance, and to stretch out her arms towards me. Other ideas perhaps came to her aid, to make me unbend my brow a little and to lead me more and more to finish my journey. Certain, from what I had heard, that I should see Mr Boers at the Cape restored to health, every step I took towards it increased the transports of my anxiety, in which my people sincerely participated with me. I could not possibly be so near the Cape without being anxious to see the road which was to conduct me thither disappear behind me: all my thoughts were therefore occupied about the satisfaction I expected to enjoy on seeing my friends; but especially in embracing him, who for many reasons had the first claim to the most distinguished place in my affection and esteem.

Upon the 26th, after having escaped, if I may so say, ten plantations which were on our road, I crossed the Broad River; a league farther, the *Waater-Val*, or Water-fall; and afterwards a few other plantations, which had certainly been long waiting to see me pass; for the inhabitants noticing that I did not halt, ran after me as if I had been a curious wild beast, and never left me till they had examined me for some time. Having passed the *Roye-Sand-Kloof*, the Valley of Red Sand, and the *Klein-Berg-Rivier*, or Little River of the Mountains, when I arrived next morning, the 27th, at *Swart-Land*, I desired that my horses, which I had not used for some time, should be saddled; and leaving a number of inquisitive planters about my carriages and baggage, I proceeded forwards, attended by my faithful Klaas; and came with much delight, the same night, to the house of my ancient host, the worthy Slaber, who had so grandly entertained me two years before, when the dreadful accident before mentioned befel me at the bay of Saldanha.

It is not easy to express the joy, and especially the astonishment, which my arrival occasioned to all this worthy family. They had so little expectation of it; I was so disguised by my beard, and the different accounts which had been circulated at the Cape, and in the neighbourhood, of the distant excursions and the hair-breadth escapes

escapes to which I had exposed myself, made my death so very probable, that they were all frightened on my approach. The women especially swore vengeance against that bushy and grim covering which hid part of my countenance. It had, tis true, for some time been of no service, and consequently rather fatiguing to me. Mitje-Slaber, my host's youngest daughter, kindly proposed to deliver me from it. I therefore falling on my knees devoted my head as a sacrifice. Scarcely had I reached this happy retreat, when I sent off Klaas to Mr Boers to acquaint him with my return; and I sent him, likewise, two of those little antelopes called *steen-bucks*, and some partridges which I had killed on the road. The following morning I was congratulated in a message from my friend, who sent me a couple of his finest horses, and many pressing entreaties to adjourn to his house forthwith.

My people and carriages whom I had left behind me, arrived that same day. The time of our parting was now drawing nigh; we had mutually forgot our little quarrels: some gave free vent to sighs, others even shed tears; and, as I could not contain mine, we could only comfort ourselves with talking about another journey, if circumstances should hereafter permit.

The remainder of my effects, especially such articles as could be of no use to me in town, I cheerfully gave to these friends who had been sharers with me in all my adventures and labours; I even distributed among them my very clothes and linen, reserving only what I had upon me at the time. I desired two of them to continue at Slaber's house a few days, to take charge of the she-goats and those oxen which were either distressed or of no use to me, which I left at this plantation in the mean time. Mr Boer's house at the Cape was then appointed as the rendezvous to the rest of my troop, for which I immediately set out; and that very evening was so happy as to embrace that valuable friend, to whom I had been so much indebted, and whom I at one time never expected to have seen.

My baggage and servants arrived on the 2d of April, when I paid them their wages, and expressed my gratitude for their fidelity. All of them were eager once more
to

to see their own families. Poor Klaas could hardly be torn from me; I held out my hand to him, desiring him to call upon me frequently, as his horde was nearer the Cape Town than those of the others; I assured him of my continued friendship and protection; but, what he valued most, I told him, I did not mean to be long idle here, and would soon need more of his service. This, this only alleviated his sorrow. I must acknowledge, I was not a little affected in parting from him, and could not conceal my emotion, even amidst the crowds of visitors who thronged Mr Boer's house; many from motives of regard and friendship for me, but still a greater number from curiosity.

ALTHOUGH it was in my second Journey only that I saw the male and female Giraffe, yet I have placed figures of these animals at the end of this volume; and this irregular anticipation I have submitted to, from the requests of my friends, which have always weighed as commands in my mind.

An explanation of these plates I hereto subjoin, by way of supplement to this work, in which I shall trace a sketch of the Natural History of these animals, reserving a more particular Account and Description for my next publication.

There have been many and different accounts published of the Giraffe; but although some of them have been both elegantly and scientifically written, none have yet described *justly* even the shape, much less the organization, character, manners, and tastes of this animal.

Were precedence among Quadrupeds to be settled from height, the Giraffe must hold a first rank. The male of which the engraving is annexed, and which I preserve in my own collection, measured at the time I killed it sixteen feet four inches from the hoof to the point of the horns. I mention horns, to make myself understood, although in fact it has none; only between the ears, upon the crown of the head, two excrescences spring up from the Cranium as high as eight or nine inches, having no joint, but ending in a convex knob; these

these excrescences are inclosed with a row of straight strong hair, overtopping them by several lines. The female is not so tall as the male; that in the plate, only measured thirteen feet and six inches; and that she was at her full growth, was evident from her teeth. So that from the great number of these animals I killed, I may safely fix it as a settled point, that the height of the males is commonly fifteen or sixteen feet, that of the females thirteen or fourteen.

But the height of these animals will furnish no rule by which to determine its thickness or size in other respects. They may be justly said to be all legs and neck. Those who are familiar with the full long figures of Europe, will not think a length of seven feet from breast to tail, any way proportioned to a height of sixteen feet. There is also another defect in shape, if it may be so called, in the thickness of this animal, which is considerable at the shoulders, but at the tail quite thin and slender.

Every Naturalist or Traveller who has hitherto described the Giraffe, speaks of the hind legs as only half the length of the fore; but is it possible that those who make this assertion have ever seen this animal? or if they have seen it, did they examine it carefully? In an Italian work entitled *Descrizione degli Animali*, 1771, the author inserts an engraving of the Giraffe, though it is evident he had never seen the animal. This print corresponds in every respect with the descriptions already in print; but the exactness, one is apt to conceive, was intended as a severe criticism on these accounts.

Gilius gives the justest account of this animal of any old writer, and he says "the four legs of the Giraffe are all of the same size; but the fore thighs are so much longer than those behind, that the animal's back reclines like the roof of a house." If Gilius, when he speaks of the fore thighs, means the shoulder blade, I quite agree with his assertion as just. Heliodorus' Account of it is very incorrect. If we are to understand him speaking of the Giraffe, when he says it is about twice the size of an Ostrich, we must conclude that in the course of time, nature has made vast alterations on the appearance of one or both of these animals.

Of

Of any modern writer, Dr Allarman gives the exactest Drawing of it, which he had from Colonel Gordon.

As the horns are part of the Cranium, they cannot fall off. They are by no means solid like those of a stag, nor of a substance similar to those of an ox; much less are they a composition of hair, as Buffon asserts. They are merely a calcareous bony substance, with many small pores, as all bones have; and these bones covered universally with short thick hair, but that very unlike the soft downy hair, with which the horns of stags or roe bucks are covered.

The engravings of this animal in Buffon and Vofmar, are not accurate. In them the horns end in a point—this is not the case. They bring down the mane to the root of the tail—it only reaches the shoulders. Such errors as these, are hurtful to science, mislead the reader, and are hurtful to the characters of the authors.

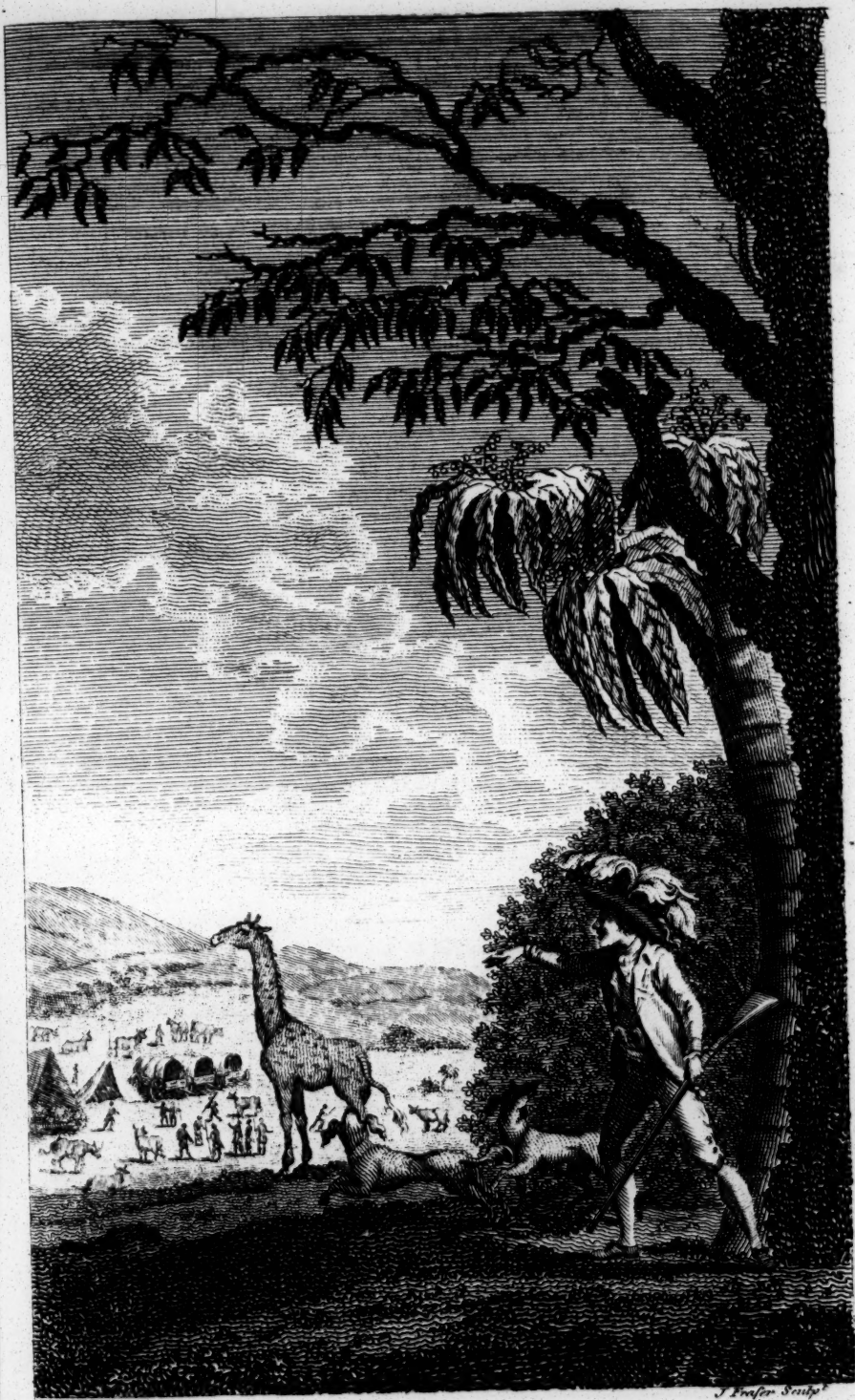
Both male and female are spotted, but they are easily known from one another, even at a distance, in different ways, besides the difference of size. The spots of the male are of a dark brown colour, nearly black, and that on a greyish white ground; the spots of the female, though on a similar ground, are of a tawny colour, and not so striking. The spots of the males, when young, are like their mothers, but turn darker, as they encrease in size and age. Leaves of trees are their food, particularly the mimosa leaves, which are peculiar to the district where they are. They eat meadow grass likewise, but can eat or drink without kneeling, though it has been alledged otherwise. They lie down often to loll or sleep, which is the occasion of a considerable hardness on the sternum and skins of their knees.

If the Giraffe were easily provoked, it would have good cause to complain of nature, which has furnished it with very few means either to attack or defend; but it is a harmless shy animal; fearful of danger, from which it trots away very quickly, so that it is not easily overtaken even by a swift horse. Some have gone the length to alledge, that it has not even strength to defend itself, but I have certain proof of its frequently beating off the lion, or at least kicking it behind till it is wearied out. I never saw it use its horns, but once; one would be apt to suppose

pose they were of no use, were it not, that Nature gives nothing in vain, though we cannot at all times comprehend her design.

Thus, in compliance with the wishes of many, I have accompanied the engravings of these animals, with a brief description; requesting the reader however, to keep in mind, that a more full account of this remarkable animal is fully intended.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.



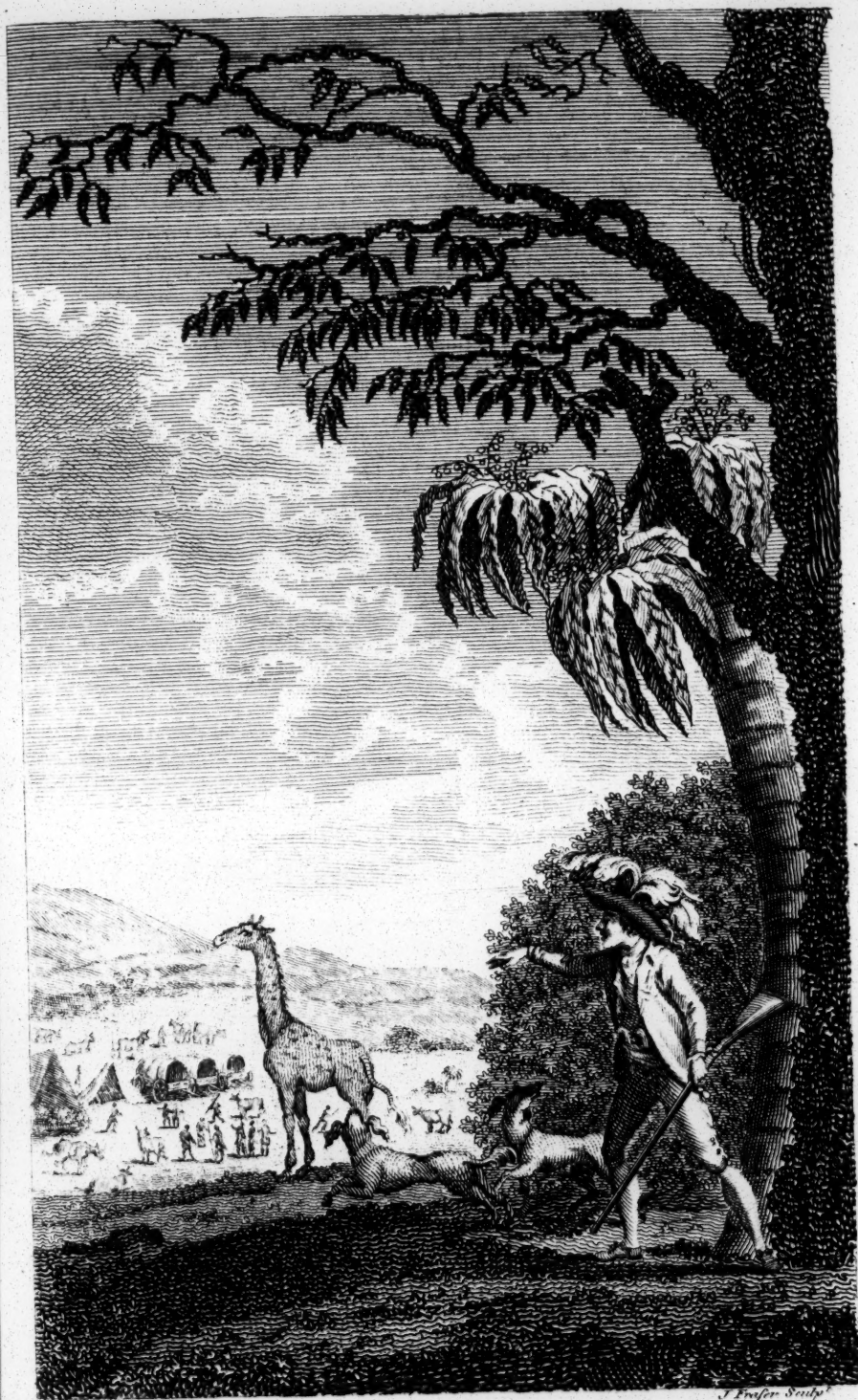
J. Fraser Sculp^r

Encampment in the Great Nimiquia Country

pose they were of no use, were it not, that Nature gives nothing in vain, though we cannot at all times comprehend her design.

Thus, in compliance with the wishes of many, I have accompanied the engravings of these animals, with a brief description; requesting the reader however, to keep in mind, that a more full account of this remarkable animal is fully intended.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.



Encampment in the Great Nimiquia Country



A HOTTENTOT MAN.



GONAGUA HOTTENTOT.

M^o Intyre sculp.



A HOTTENTOT WOMAN
in full Dress

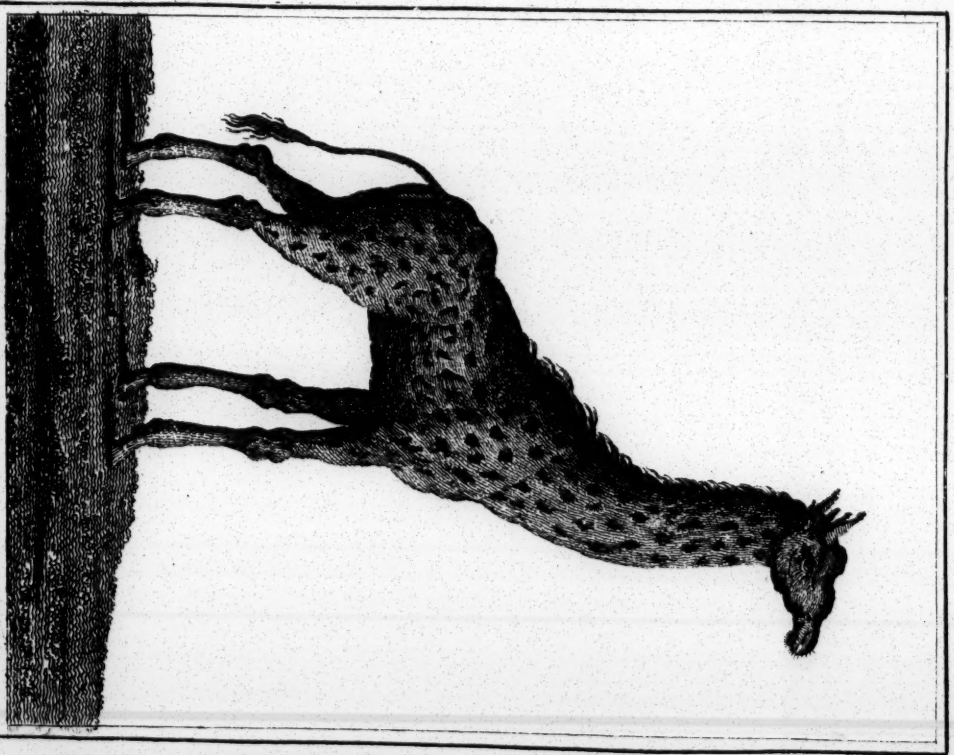
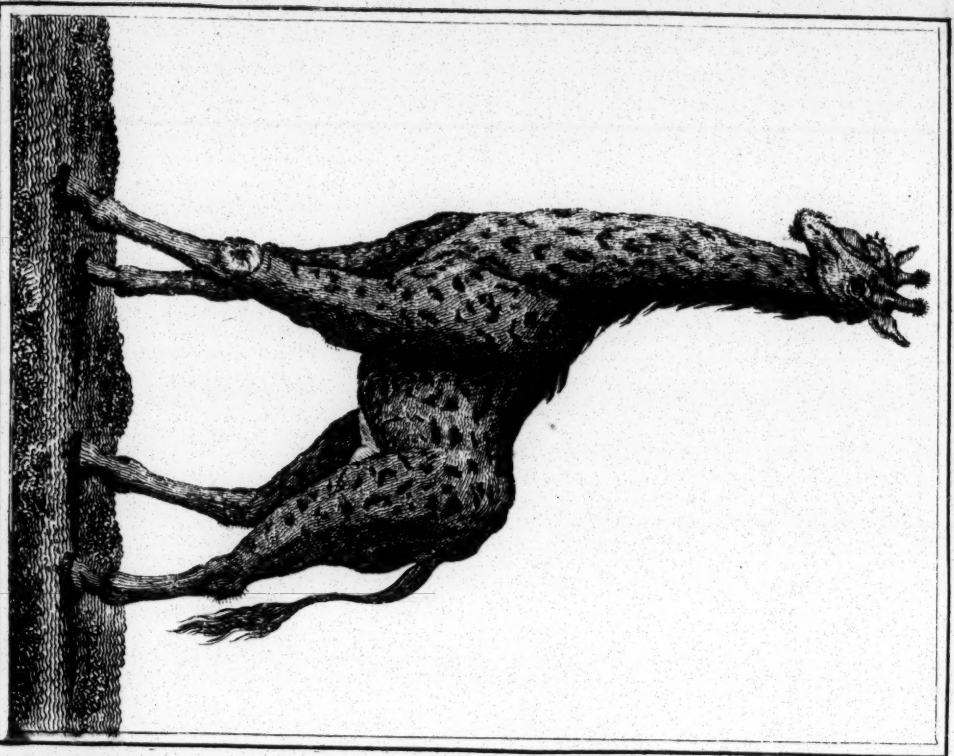
J. Thomson sculp.

A Male Giraffe or Camelopardalis.

1878

London

The Female Giraffe or Camelopardalis.



A Male Giraffe or Camelopardalis.

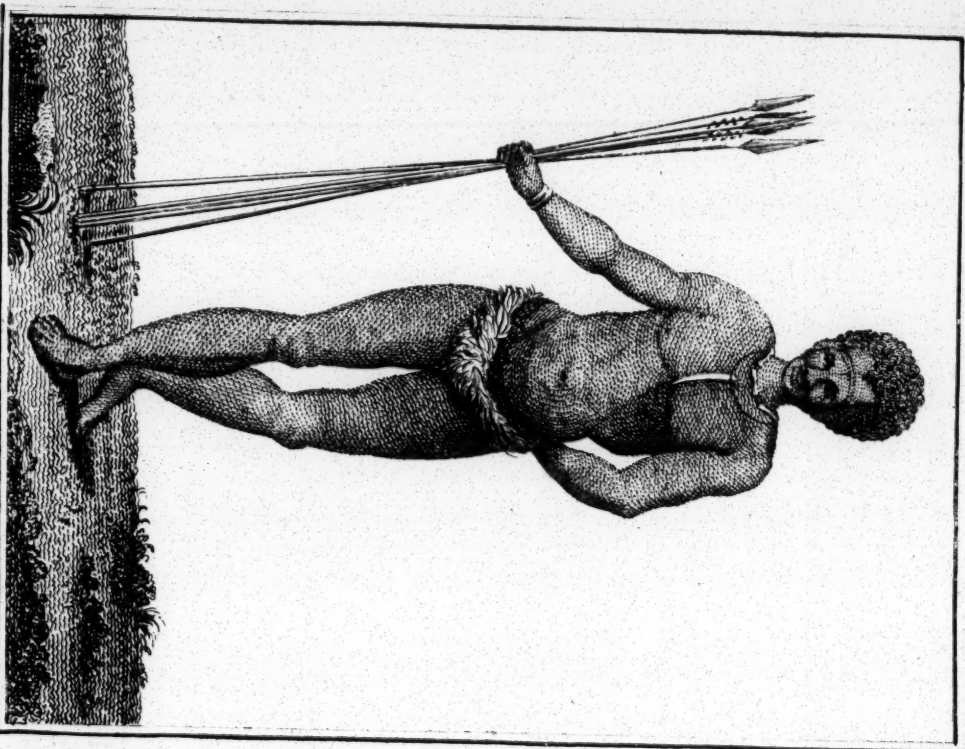
The Female Giraffe or Camelopardalis.

After the original in Edinburgh.

A CAFFRE MAN.

Mr. Bay's sketch. Edinburgh.

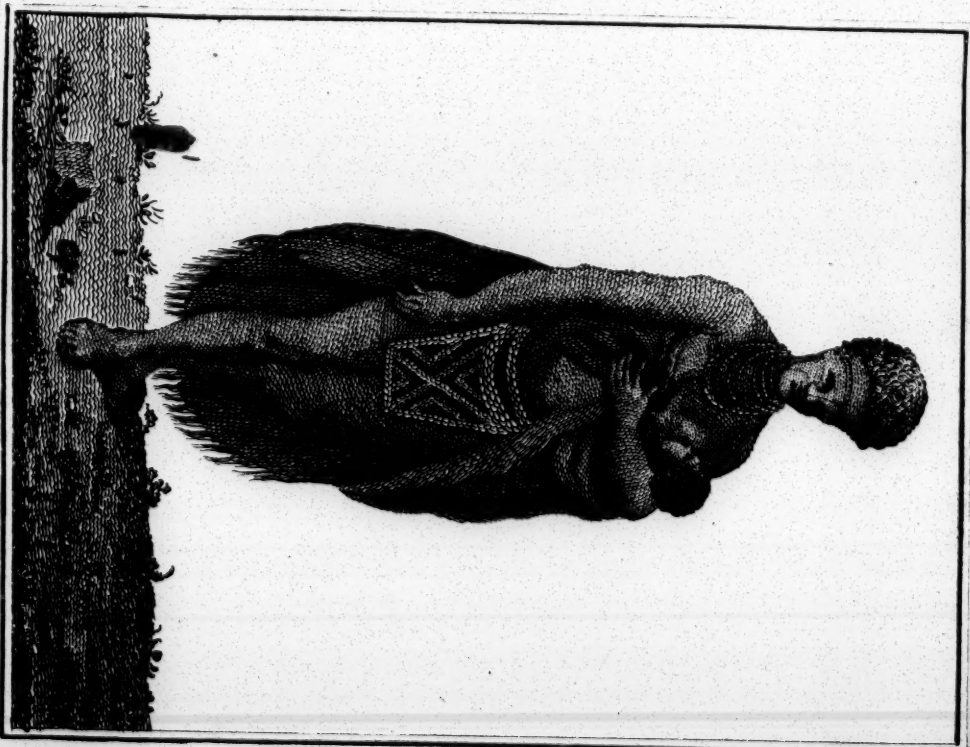
A CAFFRE WOMAN.



A CAFFRE MAN.

After Janssens's engraving.

Edinburgh.



A CAFFRE WOMAN.



NARINA, a Young Gonaqua Girl

